

CHAPTER

1

# Operations on Sets

*Animation 1.1: Operations on Sets*  
*Source & Credit: elearn.punjab*

---

## 1.1 SETS

We know that a set is a collection of well defined distinct objects or symbols. The objects are called its members or elements.

### 1.1.1 Recognize some important sets and their notations

Set of natural numbers:  $N = \{1, 2, 3, \dots\}$

Set of whole numbers:  $W = \{0, 1, 2, \dots\}$

Set of integers:  $Z = \{\dots, -3, -2, -1, 0, 1, 2, 3, \dots\}$

Set of prime numbers:  $P = \{2, 3, 5, 7, 11, \dots\}$

Set of odd numbers:  $O = \{\pm 1, \pm 3, \pm 5, \dots\}$

Set of even numbers:  $E = \{0, \pm 2, \pm 4, \dots\}$

Set of rational numbers:  $Q = \{\frac{p}{q} \mid p, q \in Z, q \neq 0\}$

### 1.1.2 Finding subsets of a set

It is illustrated through the following examples.

**Example 1:** Write all the subsets of the set  $\{2, 4\}$

**Solution:** Following are the subsets of the set  $\{2, 4\}$   
 $\phi, \{2\}, \{4\}, \{2, 4\}$

**Example 2:** Write all the subsets of the set  $\{3, 5, 7\}$

**Solution:** Following are the subsets of the set  $\{3, 5, 7\}$   
 $\phi, \{3\}, \{5\}, \{7\}, \{3, 5\}, \{3, 7\}, \{5, 7\}, \{3, 5, 7\}$

**Example 3:** Write all the subsets of the set  $X = \{a, b, c, d\}$

**Solution:** Subsets of  $X$  are:  
 $\phi, \{a\}, \{b\}, \{c\}, \{d\}, \{a, b\}, \{a, c\}, \{a, d\}, \{b, c\}, \{c, d\},$   
 $\{a, b, c\}, \{a, b, d\}, \{b, c, d\}, \{a, c, d\}, \{a, b, c, d\}$

### 1.1.3 Definitions

#### (a) Proper Subset

If  $A$  and  $B$  are two sets and every element of set  $A$  is also an element of set  $B$  but at least one element of the set  $B$  is not an element of the set  $A$ , then the set  $A$  is called a proper subset of set  $B$ . It is denoted by  $A \subset B$  and read as set  $A$  is a proper subset of the set  $B$ .

For example, if  $A = \{1, 2, 3\}$  and  $B = \{1, 2, 3, 4\}$  then  $A \subset B$ .

#### Remember that:

- (i) Every set is a subset of itself.
- (ii) Empty set is a proper subset of every non-empty set.

#### (b) Improper Subset

If  $A$  and  $B$  are two sets and set  $A$  is a subset of set  $B$  and  $B$  is also a subset of set  $A$  then  $A$  is called an improper subset of set  $B$  and  $B$  is an improper subset of set  $A$ .

- Note:**
- (i) All the subsets of a set except the set itself are proper subsets of the set.
  - (ii) Procedure of writing subsets of a given set: First of all write empty set, then singleton sets, (a set containing one element only is called singleton set) then sets having two members and so on. Continue till the number of elements becomes equal to the given set.
  - (iii) Every set is an improper subset of itself.
  - (iv) There is no proper subset of an empty set.
  - (v) There is only one proper subset of a singleton set.

### 1.1.4 Power Set

A set consisting of all possible subsets of a given set  $A$  is called the power set of  $A$  and is denoted by  $P(A)$ .

For example, if  $A = \{a, b\}$ , then all its subsets are:

$$\phi, \{a\}, \{b\}, \{a, b\}$$

So, power set of  $A$ ,  $P(A) = \{\phi, \{a\}, \{b\}, \{a, b\}\}$

**Example 1:** Write the power set of  $B = \{3, 6, 9\}$

**Solution:**  $P(B) = \{\phi, \{3\}, \{6\}, \{9\}, \{3, 6\}, \{3, 9\}, \{6, 9\}, \{3, 6, 9\}\}$

**Remember that:**

If a set contains  $n$  elements, then the number of all its subsets will be  $2^n$ :  
for example, if  $X = \{1, 2, 3\}$  then all its subsets are  $\phi, \{1\}, \{2\}, \{3\}, \{1, 2\}, \{2, 3\}, \{1, 3\}, \{1, 2, 3\}$   
which are 8 in number and  $2^3 = 8$

**Can you tell?**

If a set  $A$  consists of 4 elements, then how many elements are in  $P(A)$ ?

**Note that:**

- The members of  $P(A)$  are all subsets of set  $A$  i.e.  $\{a\} \in P(A)$  but  $a \notin P(A)$ .
- The power set of  $\{\}$  is not empty as number of subsets of  $\{\}$  is  $2^0 = 1$  i.e.  $P(\phi) = \{\phi\}$  or  $\{\{\}\}$

### EXERCISE 1.1

1. Write all subsets of the following sets.
 

(i) $\{\}$	(ii) $\{1\}$	(iii) $\{a, b\}$
------------	--------------	------------------
2. Write all proper subsets of the following sets.
 

(i) $\{a\}$	(ii) $\{0, 1\}$	(iii) $\{1, 2, 3\}$
-------------	-----------------	---------------------
3. Write the power set of the following sets.
 

(i) $\{-1, 1\}$	(ii) $\{a, b, c\}$
-----------------	--------------------

## 1.2 OPERATIONS ON SETS

### 1.2.1 Verification of Commutative and Associative Laws with respect to Union and Intersection

#### • Commutative Laws of Union and Intersection on Sets

If  $A$  and  $B$  are two sets then the commutative laws with respect to union and intersection are written as:

- (i)  $A \cup B = B \cup A$  (Commutative law of union)
- (ii)  $A \cap B = B \cap A$  (Commutative law of intersection)

**Example:** If  $A = \{1, 2, 3, 10\}$  and  $B = \{3, 5, 7, 9\}$

- (i) Verify the commutative law of union
- (ii) Verify the commutative law of intersection

**Solution:**  $A = \{1, 2, 3, \dots, 10\}, B = \{3, 5, 7, 9\}$

- (i)  $A \cup B = \{1, 2, 3, \dots, 10\} \cup \{3, 5, 7, 9\}$   
 $= \{1, 2, 3, \dots, 10\}$   
 $B \cup A = \{3, 5, 7, 9\} \cup \{1, 2, 3, \dots, 10\}$   
 $= \{1, 2, 3, \dots, 10\}$

Therefore,  $A \cup B = B \cup A$

- (ii)  $A \cap B = \{1, 2, 3, \dots, 10\} \cap \{3, 5, 7, 9\}$   
 $= \{3, 5, 7, 9\}$   
 $B \cap A = \{3, 5, 7, 9\} \cap \{1, 2, 3, \dots, 10\}$   
 $= \{3, 5, 7, 9\}$

Therefore,  $A \cap B = B \cap A$

#### • Associative Laws of Union and Intersection

If  $A, B$  and  $C$  are three sets then the Associative laws with respect to union and intersection are written respectively as:

- (i)  $A \cup (B \cap C) = (A \cup B) \cap C$
- (ii)  $A \cap (B \cup C) = (A \cap B) \cup C$

**Remember that:**

To find union / intersection of three sets, first we find the union / intersection of any two of them and then the union / intersection of the third set with the resultant set.

**Example 1:** Verify the associative laws of union

(i)  $A \cup (B \cup C)$       (ii)  $(A \cup B) \cup C$

where  $A = \{1,2,3,4\}$ ,  $B = \{3,4,5,6,7,8\}$  and  $C = \{6,7,8,9,10\}$

**Solution:** (i)  $A \cup (B \cup C) = \{1,2,3,4\} \cup (\{3,4,5,6,7,8\} \cup \{6,7,8,9,10\})$   
 $= \{1, 2, 3, 4\} \cup \{3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10\}$   
 $= \{1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10\}$  ..... (1)

(ii)  $(A \cup B) \cup C = (\{1, 2, 3, 4\} \cup \{3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8\}) \cup \{6, 7, 8, 9, 10\}$   
 $= \{1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8\} \cup \{6, 7, 8, 9, 10\}$   
 $= \{1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10\}$  ..... (2)

Thus, from (1) and (2), we conclude that  $A \cup (B \cup C) = (A \cup B) \cup C$

**Example 2:** Verify the associative laws of intersection

(i)  $A \cap (B \cap C)$  and (ii)  $(A \cap B) \cap C$  for sets given in example 1.

**Solution:** (i)  $A \cap (B \cap C) = \{1, 2, 3, 4\} \cap (\{3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8\} \cap \{6, 7, 8, 9, 10\})$   
 $= \{1,2,3,4\} \cap \{6, 7,8\}$   
 $= \phi$  ..... (a)

(ii)  $(A \cap B) \cap C = (\{1, 2, 3, 4\} \cap \{3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8\}) \cap \{6, 7, 8, 9, 10\}$   
 $= \{3, 4\} \cap \{6, 7, 8, 9, 10\}$   
 $= \phi$  ..... (b)

Thus, from (a) and (b), we conclude that  $A \cap (B \cap C) = (A \cap B) \cap C$

**1.2.2 Verification of Distributive Laws**

If  $A, B$  and  $C$  are three sets, then  $A \cup (B \cap C) = (A \cup B) \cap (A \cup C)$  is called the distributive law of union over intersection.

If  $A, B$  and  $C$  are three sets, then  $A \cap (B \cup C) = (A \cap B) \cup (A \cap C)$  is called the distributive law of intersection over union.

**Example:** Verify:

- (I) Distributive law of union over intersection
- (II) Distributive law of intersection over union

where  $A = \{1, 2, 3, \dots, 20\}$ ,  $B = \{5, 10, 15, \dots, 30\}$  and  $C = \{3, 9, 15, 21, 27, 33\}$ .

**Solution:** (I)

L.H.S  $= A \cup (B \cap C) = \{1,2,3, \dots, 20\} \cup (\{5, 10, 15, \dots, 30\} \cap \{3, 9, 15, 21, 27, 33\})$   
 $= \{1, 2, 3, \dots, 20\} \cup \{15\}$

$\therefore A \cup (B \cap C) = \{1,2,3, \dots, 20\}$  .....(i)

Now R.H.S  $= A \cup B = \{1,2,3, \dots, 20\} \cup \{5,10,15, \dots, 30\}$   
 $= \{1, 2, 3, \dots, 20, 25, 30\}$   
 and  $A \cup C = \{1, 2, 3, \dots, 20\} \cup \{3, 9, 15, 21, 27, 33\}$   
 $= \{1, 2, 3, \dots, 20, 21, 27, 33\}$   
 $(A \cup B) \cap (A \cup C) = \{1, 2, 3, 4, \dots, 20, 25, 30\} \cap \{1, 2, 3, \dots, 20, 21, 27, 33\}$   
 $\therefore (A \cup B) \cap (A \cup C) = \{1,2,3, \dots, 20\}$  .....(ii)

Thus, from (i) and (ii), we conclude that  $A \cup (B \cap C) = (A \cup B) \cap (A \cup C)$

(II) L.H.S  $= A \cap (B \cup C) = \{1, 2, 3, \dots, 20\} \cap (\{5,10,15, \dots, 30\} \cup \{3, 9, 15, 21, 27, 33\})$   
 $= \{1, 2, 3, \dots, 20\} \cap \{3, 5, 9, 10, 15, 20, 21, 25, 27, 30, 33\}$

$\therefore A \cap (B \cup C) = \{3, 5, 9, 10, 15, 20\}$  ..... (i)

R.H.S  $= A \cap B = \{1, 2, 3, \dots, 20\} \cap \{5, 10, 15, \dots, 30\}$   
 $= \{5, 10, 15, 20\}$   
 $A \cap C = \{1, 2, 3, \dots, 20\} \cap \{3, 9, 15, 21, 27, 33\}$   
 $= \{3, 9, 15\}$   
 $(A \cap B) \cup (A \cap C) = \{5, 10, 15, 20\} \cup \{3, 9, 15\}$   
 $\therefore (A \cap B) \cup (A \cap C) = \{3, 5, 9, 10, 15, 20\}$  ..... (ii)

Thus, from (i) and (ii), we conclude that  $A \cap (B \cup C) = (A \cap B) \cup (A \cap C)$

### 1.2.3 De Morgan's Laws

If  $A$  and  $B$  are the subsets of a universal set  $U$ , then

(i)  $(A \cup B)^c = A^c \cap B^c$       (ii)  $(A \cap B)^c = A^c \cup B^c$

**Example:** Verify De Morgan's Laws if:

$U = \{1, 2, 3, \dots, 10\}$ ,  $A = \{2, 4, 6\}$  and  $B = \{1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7\}$

**Solution:** (i) L.H.S =  $(A \cup B)^c$

$A \cup B = \{2, 4, 6\} \cup \{1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7\}$   
 $= \{1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7\}$

$\therefore (A \cup B)^c = U - (A \cup B) = \{8, 9, 10\}$  ..... (i)

R.H.S =  $A^c \cap B^c$

$A^c = U - A$

$= \{1, 2, 3, \dots, 10\} - \{2, 4, 6\}$   
 $= \{1, 3, 5, 7, 8, 9, 10\}$

$B^c = U - B$

$= \{1, 2, 3, \dots, 10\} - \{1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7\}$   
 $B^c = \{8, 9, 10\}$

$\therefore A^c \cap B^c = \{1, 3, 5, 7, 8, 9, 10\} \cap \{8, 9, 10\}$   
 $= \{8, 9, 10\}$  ..... (ii)

Thus, from (i) and (ii) we have  $(A \cup B)^c = A^c \cap B^c$

(ii) L.H.S =  $(A \cap B)^c$

$A \cap B = \{2, 4, 6\} \cap \{1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7\}$   
 $= \{2, 4, 6\}$

$(A \cap B)^c = U - (A \cap B)$   
 $= \{1, 2, 3, \dots, 10\} - \{2, 4, 6\}$   
 $= \{1, 3, 5, 7, 8, 9, 10\}$  ..... (iii)

R.H.S =  $A^c = U - A = \{1, 2, 3, \dots, 10\} - \{2, 4, 6\}$   
 $= \{1, 3, 5, 7, 8, 9, 10\}$

and  $B^c = U - B = \{1, 2, 3, \dots, 10\} - \{1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7\}$



August De Morgan (1806 - 1871), a British mathematician who formulated De Morgan's laws.

$= \{8, 9, 10\}$

$\therefore A^c \cup B^c = \{1, 3, 5, 7, 8, 9, 10\} \cup \{8, 9, 10\}$

$= \{1, 3, 5, 7, 8, 9, 10\}$  ..... (iv)

Thus, from (iii) and (iv), we have  $(A \cap B)^c = A^c \cup B^c$

### EXERCISE 1.2

1. Verify:

(a)  $A \cup B = B \cup A$  and (b)  $A \cap B = B \cap A$ , when

(i)  $A = \{1, 2, 3, \dots, 10\}$ ,  $B = \{7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12\}$

(ii)  $A = \{1, 2, 3, \dots, 15\}$ ,  $B = \{6, 8, 10, \dots, 20\}$

2. Verify:

(a)  $X \cup (Y \cap Z) = (X \cup Y) \cap Z$  and (b)  $X \cap (Y \cup Z) = (X \cap Y) \cup Z$ , when

(i)  $X = \{a, b, c, d\}$ ,  $Y = \{b, d, c, f\}$  and  $Z = \{c, f, g, h\}$

(ii)  $X = \{1, 2, 3, \dots, 10\}$ ,  $Y = \{2, 4, 6, 7, 8\}$  and  $Z = \{5, 6, 7, 8\}$

(iii)  $X = \{-1, 0, 2, 4, 5\}$ ,  $Y = \{1, 2, 3, 4, 7\}$  and  $Z = \{4, 6, 8, 10\}$

(iii)  $X = \{1, 2, 3, \dots, 14\}$ ,  $Y = \{6, 8, 10, \dots, 20\}$  and  $Z = \{1, 3, 5, 7\}$

3. Show that:

if  $A = \{a, b, c\}$ ,  $B = \{b, d, f\}$  and  $C = \{a, f, c\}$ ,

$A \cup (B \cap C) = (A \cup B) \cap (A \cup C)$

4. Show that:

if  $A = \{0\}$ ,  $B = \{0, 1\}$  and  $C = \{ \}$ ,

$A \cup (B \cap C) = (A \cup B) \cap (A \cup C)$

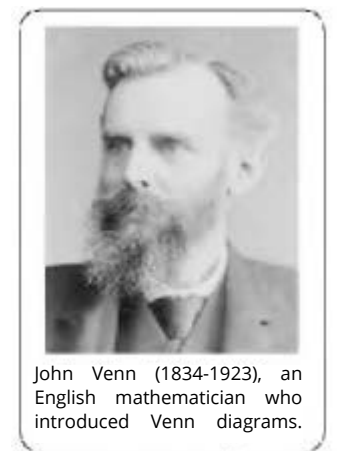
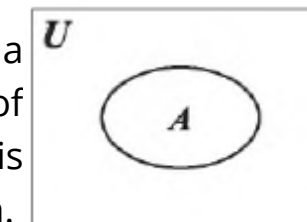
5. Verify De Morgan's Laws if:

$U = N$ ,  $A = \phi$ , and  $B = P$

### 1.3 VENN DIAGRAM

#### Operations on Sets Through Venn-diagram

A universal set is represented in the form of a rectangle, its subsets are represented in the form of closed figures inside the rectangle. Adjoining figure is the representation for  $A \subseteq U$  through Venn-diagram.



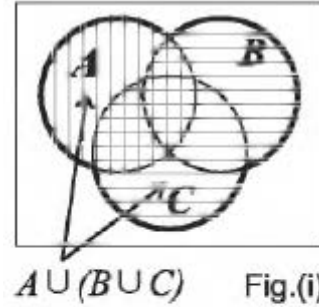
John Venn (1834-1923), an English mathematician who introduced Venn diagrams.



### 1.3.1 Demonstration of Union and Intersection of three overlapping sets through Venn diagram

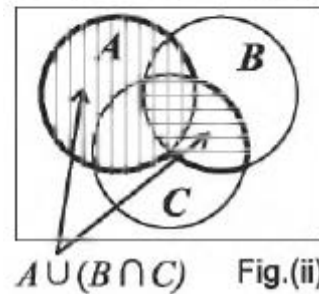
(i)  $A \cup (B \cap C)$

In fig. (i) set  $B \cap C$  is represented by horizontal lines and set  $A \cup (B \cap C)$  is represented by vertical lines. Thus,  $A \cup (B \cap C)$  is represented by double lines and single lines.



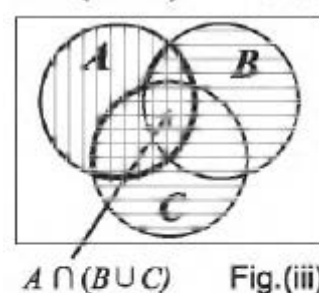
(ii)  $A \cup (B \cap C)$

In fig. (ii) set  $B \cap C$  is represented by horizontal lines and set  $A \cup (B \cap C)$  is represented by vertical lines. Thus,  $A \cup (B \cap C)$  is represented by double lines and single lines.



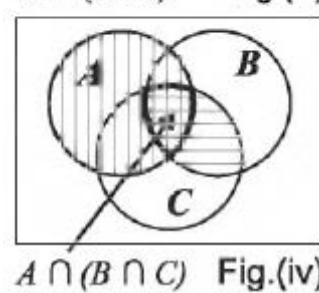
(iii)  $A \cap (B \cup C)$

In fig. (iii) set  $B \cup C$  is represented by horizontal lines and set  $A \cap (B \cup C)$  is represented by vertical lines. Thus,  $A \cap (B \cup C)$  is represented only by double lines i.e, small boxes.



(iv)  $A \cap (B \cap C)$

In fig. (iv) set  $B \cap C$  is represented by horizontal lines and set  $A \cap (B \cap C)$  is represented by vertical lines. Thus,  $A \cap (B \cap C)$  is represented only by double lines.



### 1.3.2 Verify associative and distributive laws through Venn diagram

• **Associative Laws**

(a) **Associative Law of Union**

$$A \cup (B \cup C) = (A \cup B) \cup C$$

Let  $A = \{1,3,5, 7,9,10\}$ ,  $B = \{2,4, 6,8,9,10\}$  and  $C = \{2,3,5, 7,11,13\}$

$$L.H.S = A \cup (B \cup C)$$

$$B \cup C = \{2,4, 6, 8,9,10\} \cup \{2,3,5, 7,11,13\}$$

$$= \{2,3,4,5, 6,7,8,9,10,11,13\}$$

$$A \cup (B \cup C) = \{1,3,5,7,9,10\} \cup \{2,3,4,5,6, 7,8,9,10,11,13\}$$

$$= \{1,2,3,4,5,6,7,8,9,10,11,13\}$$

$$R.H.S = (A \cup B) \cup C$$

$$A \cup B = \{1,3,5, 7,9,10\} \cup \{2,4, 6, 8,9,10\}$$

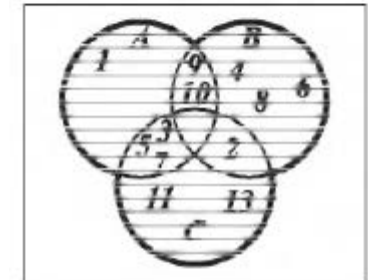
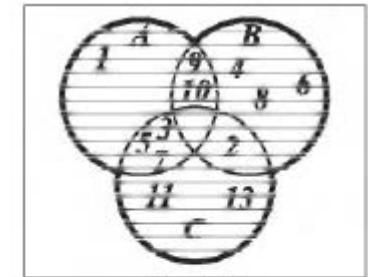
$$= \{1,2,3,4,5,6,7,8,9,10\}$$

$$(A \cup B) \cup C = \{1,2,3,4,5, 6, 7,8,9,10\} \cup \{2,3,5,7,11,13\}$$

$$= \{1,2,3,4,5,6,7,8,9,10,11,13\}$$

From fig. (v) and (vi), it is clear that

$$A \cup (B \cup C) = (A \cup B) \cup C$$



(b) **Associative Law of Intersection**

$$A \cap (B \cap C) = (A \cap B) \cap C$$

$$A = \{1,3,5, 7,9,10\}, \quad B = \{2,4,6,8,9,10\} \text{ and}$$

$$C = \{2,3,5, 7,11,13\}$$

$$L.H.S = A \cap (B \cap C)$$

$$B \cap C = \{2,4, 6, 8,9,10\} \cap \{2,3,5, 7,11,13\} = \{2\}$$

$$A \cap (B \cap C) = \{1,3,5, 7,9,10\} \cap \{2\} = \{\}$$

Horizontal lines represent  $B \cap C$  and vertical lines represent  $A \cap (B \cap C)$ . Thus,  $A \cap (B \cap C) = \{\}$

$$R.H.S = (A \cap B) \cap C$$

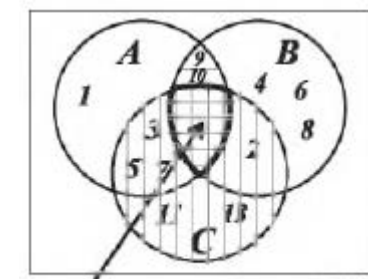
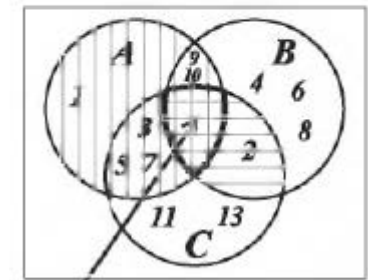
$$A \cap B = \{1,3, 5, 7, 9, 10\} \cap \{2, 4, 6, 8, 9, 10\}$$

$$= \{9, 10\}$$

$$(A \cap B) \cap C = \{9,10\} \cap \{2,3,5,7,11,13\} = \{\}$$

Horizontal lines represent  $A \cap B$  and vertical lines represent  $(A \cap B) \cap C$ . Thus,  $(A \cap B) \cap C = \{\}$

From fig. (vii) and (viii), it is clear that  $A \cap (B \cap C) = (A \cap B) \cap C$



**Distributive Laws**

**(a) Distributive Law of Intersection over Union**

$$A \cap (B \cup C) = (A \cap B) \cup (A \cap C)$$

Let  $A = \{1,3,5, 7,9,10\}, B = \{2,4, 6,8,9,10\}$

and  $C = \{2,3,5, 7,11,13\}$

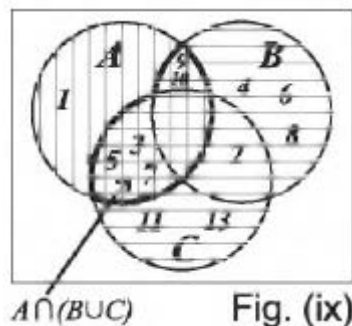
L.H.S =  $A \cap (B \cup C)$

$$B \cup C = \{2,4, 6,8,9,10\} \cup \{2,3,5, 7,11,13\}$$

$$= \{2,3,4,5, 6, 7,8,9,10,11,13\}$$

$$A \cap (B \cup C) = \{1,3,5, 7,9,10\} \cap \{2,3,4, 5, 6, 7, 8,9,10,11,13\} = \{3,5, 7,9,10\}$$

Horizontal lines represent  $B \cup C$  and vertical lines  $A \cap (B \cup C)$ . Thus, slanting lines represent  $A \cap (B \cup C)$ .



$A \cap (B \cup C)$  Fig. (ix)

R.H.S =  $(A \cap B) \cup (A \cap C)$

$$A \cap B = \{1,3,5,7,9,10\} \cap \{2,4,6,8,9,10\} = \{9,10\}$$

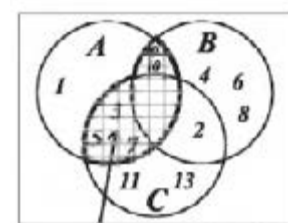
$$A \cap C = \{1,3,5,7,9,10\} \cap \{2,3,5,7,11,13\} = \{3,5,7\}$$

$$(A \cap B) \cup (A \cap C) = \{9,10\} \cup \{3, 5,7\} = \{3,5,7,9,10\}$$

Horizontal lines represent  $A \cap B$ , vertical lines represent  $A \cap C$  and slanting lines represent  $(A \cap B) \cup (A \cap C)$ .

From fig. (ix) and (x), it is clear that  $A \cap (B \cup C) = (A \cap B) \cup (A \cap C)$

Hence distributive law of intersection over union holds.



$(A \cap B) \cup (A \cap C)$  Fig. (x)

**(b) Distributive Law of Union over Intersection**

$$A \cup (B \cap C) = (A \cup B) \cap (A \cup C)$$

$A = \{1,3,5,7,9,10\}, B = \{2,4,6,8,9,10\}$  and  $C = \{2,3,5, 7,11,13\}$

L.H.S =  $A \cup (B \cap C)$

$$B \cap C = \{2,4, 6, 8,10\} \cap \{2,3, 5, 7,11,13\} = \{2\}$$

Horizontal lines represent  $B \cap C$ , vertical lines represent  $A \cup (B \cap C)$ .

Thus, slanting lines represent  $A \cup (B \cap C)$ .

$$A \cup (B \cap C) = \{1, 3, 5, 7, 9,10\} \cup \{2\} = \{1,2, 3, 5, 7, 9,10\}$$

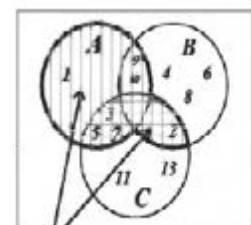
R.H.S =  $(A \cup B) \cap (A \cup C)$

$$A \cup B = \{1,3, 5, 7,9,10\} \cup \{2,4, 6, 8,9,10\} = \{1,2,3,4, 5, 6, 7, 8,9,10\}$$

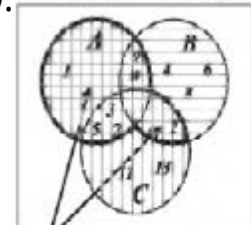
$$A \cup C = \{1,3,5, 7,9,10\} \cup \{2,3,5, 7,11,13\} = \{1,2,3,5, 7,9,10,11,13\}$$

$$(A \cup B) \cap (A \cup C) = \{1,2,3,4,5, 6, 7,8,9,10\} \cap \{1,2,3,5, 7,9,10,11,13\}$$

$$= \{1,2,3,5,7,9,10\}$$



$A \cup (B \cap C)$  Fig. (xi)



$(A \cup B) \cap (A \cup C)$  Fig. (xii)

Horizontal lines represent  $A \cup B$ , vertical lines represent  $A \cup C$  and slanting lines represent  $(A \cup B) \cap (A \cup C)$ . From fig. (xi) and (xii), it is clear that  $A \cup (B \cap C) = (A \cup B) \cap (A \cup C)$ . Hence, distributive law of union over intersection holds.

**EXERCISE 1.3**

1. Verify the commutative law of union and intersection of the following sets through Venn diagrams.

(i)  $A = \{3,5, 7,9,11,13\}$

(ii) The sets  $N$  and  $Z$

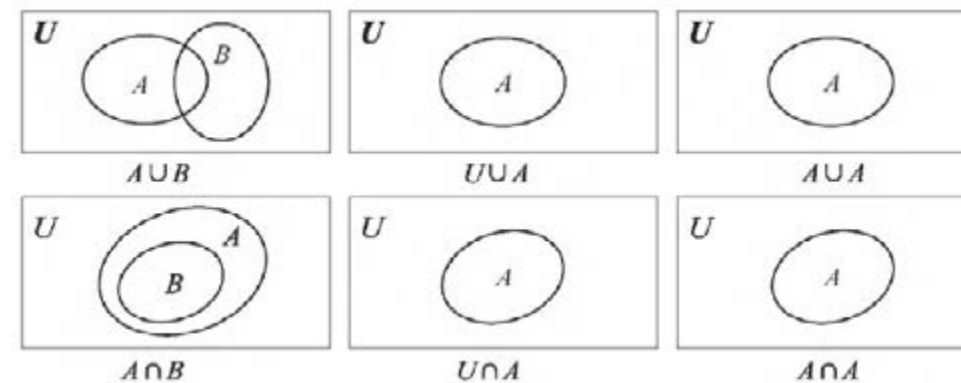
$B = \{5,9,13,17,21,25\}$

(iii)  $C = \{x | x \in N \wedge 8 \leq x \leq 18\}$

(iv) The sets  $I$  and  $O$

$D = \{y | y \in N \wedge 9 \leq y \leq 19\}$

2. Copy the following figures and shade according to the operation mentioned below each:



3. For the given sets, verify the following laws through venn diagram.

(i) Associative law of Union of sets.

(ii) Associative law of Intersection of sets.

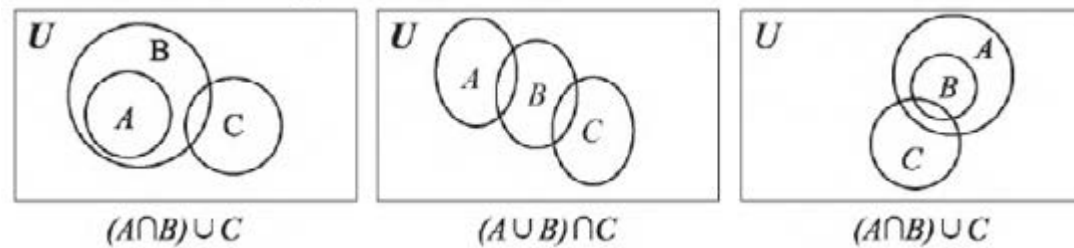
(iii) Distributive law of Union over intersection of sets.

(iv) Distributive law of Intersection over Union of sets.

(a)  $A = \{2,4, 6,8,10,12\}, B = \{1,3,5,7,9,11\}$  and  $C = \{3, 6,9,12,15\}$

(b)  $A = \{x | x \in Z \wedge 8 \leq x \leq 25\}, B = \{y | y \in Z \wedge - 2 < y < 6\}$  and  $C = \{z | z \in Z \wedge z \leq 8\}$

4. Copy the following Venn diagrams and shade according to the operation, given below each diagram.



### REVIEW EXERCISE 1

- Four options are given against each statement. Encircle the correct one.
- Write the short answers of the following questions.
  - Define a set.
  - What is the difference between whole numbers and natural numbers?
  - Define the proper and improper subsets.
  - Define a power set.
  - Define De Morgan's Laws.
- Write all subsets of the following sets.
  - $A = \{e, f, g\}$  and  $B = \{1, 3, 5\}$
  - Write the power set of  $\{a, b, c\}$
  - Verify De Morgan's Laws if  $U = \{a, b, c, d, e\}$ ,  $A = \{9, 6\}$  and  $B = \{a, b, c\}$

### SUMMARY

- Set is defined as "a collection of well defined distinct objects". These objects are called elements or members of a set.
- A set  $A$  is a subset of a set  $B$  if every element in set  $A$  is also an element in set  $B$ .
- The empty set is a subset of all sets.

- If  $A$  is a subset of  $B$  and  $A$  is not equal to  $B$  (i.e. there exists at least one element of  $B$  not contained in  $A$ ), then  $A$  is a proper subset of  $B$ , denoted by  $A \subset B$ .
- If  $A$  is a subset of  $B$  and  $A$  is equal to  $B$  (i.e. every element of  $B$  is also the element of  $A$ ), then  $A$  is an improper subset of  $B$ , denoted by,  $A = B$ .
- Intersection of two sets  $A \cap B$ , is a set which consist of only the common elements of both  $A$  and  $B$ .
- Union of two sets  $A \cup B$ , is a set which consists of elements of both  $A$  and  $B$  with common elements represented only once.
- $A$  and  $B$  are any two sets, then
  - $A \cup B = B \cup A$  (Commutative law over union)
  - $A \cap B = B \cap A$  (Commutative law over intersection)
- Let  $A$ ,  $B$  and  $C$  be any three sets, then
  - $A \cup (B \cap C) = (A \cup B) \cap (A \cup C)$  (Associative law of union of sets)
  - $A \cap (B \cup C) = (A \cap B) \cup (A \cap C)$  (Associative law of intersection of sets)
- Let  $A$ ,  $B$  and  $C$  be any three sets, then distributive laws are given below
  - $A \cup (B \cap C) = (A \cup B) \cap (A \cup C)$   
(distributive law of union over intersection)
  - $A \cap (B \cup C) = (A \cap B) \cup (A \cap C)$   
(distributive law of intersection over union)
- Let  $A$ ,  $B$  and  $C$  be any three sets then according to the De Morgan laws.
  - $(A \cup B)^c = A^c \cap B^c$
  - $(A \cap B)^c = A^c \cup B^c$
- A Venn diagram is a pictorial representation of sets and operations performed on sets.



CHAPTER

2

# Real Numbers

## 2.1 IRRATIONAL NUMBERS

### 2.1.1 Definition of an Irrational Number

The numbers which cannot be written in the form  $\frac{p}{q}$  where  $p, q \in \mathbb{Z}$  and  $q \neq 0$ , are called irrational numbers. We know that there is no such rational number whose square is 2.

Therefore, the square root of 2 is not a rational number. Similarly  $\sqrt{2}$ ,  $\sqrt{2}$ ,  $\frac{\sqrt{5}}{7}$  and  $\frac{\sqrt{2}}{3}$  are not rational numbers. These are called irrational numbers. The set of irrational numbers is denoted by  $Q'$ .

It can also be defined as a number whose decimal representation is non-terminating and non-recurring is called an **irrational** number.

### 2.1.2 Recognition of Rational and Irrational Number

We have already learnt about rational numbers and irrational numbers. Now we recognize these numbers with the help of the following examples.

**Example 1:** Which of the following numbers are rational numbers?

$$\frac{2}{3}, \sqrt{9}, \frac{-7}{9}, \sqrt{\frac{16}{25}}, \frac{6}{11}, \sqrt{5}, \sqrt{7}, \sqrt{25}$$

**Solution:**

The numbers  $\frac{2}{3}$ ,  $\sqrt{9}$ ,  $\frac{-7}{9}$ ,  $\sqrt{\frac{16}{25}}$ ,  $\frac{6}{11}$ , and  $\sqrt{25}$  are rational numbers because all of these numbers can be expressed in the form of  $\frac{p}{q}$ , where  $p, q \in \mathbb{Z}$  and  $q \neq 0$ .

**Example 2:** Which of the following numbers are irrational numbers?

$$\sqrt{2}, 1.7320505, \sqrt{4}, 2.236068, \sqrt{16}, \sqrt{17}, \sqrt{19}, \sqrt{25}, \sqrt{37}$$

**Solution:** The numbers  $\sqrt{2}$ ,  $1.7320505$ ,  $2.236068$ ,  $\sqrt{17}$ ,  $\sqrt{19}$  and  $\sqrt{37}$  are irrational numbers because all of these cannot be written in the form of  $\frac{p}{q}$ , where  $p, q \in \mathbb{Z}$  and  $q \neq 0$

### 2.1.3 Real Numbers

Now we define the set of Real Numbers as: "The union of the set of rational numbers  $Q$  and the set of irrational numbers  $Q'$  is called the set of Real Numbers and is denoted by  $R$ . i.e.,

$$R = Q \cup Q'$$

### 2.1.4 Demonstration of Non-Terminating / Non Repeating decimals

- **Terminating decimal fractions**

The decimal fraction in which the number of digits after the decimal point is finite or, while converting a rational number to the decimal fraction the division process ends, then it is called a terminating decimal fraction. These fractions can easily be converted in the form  $\frac{p}{q}$  of rational numbers where  $p, q \in \mathbb{Z}$  and  $q \neq 0$ , as 0.25, 3.125 and 0.0625 etc. are also the examples of terminating decimal fractions.

Look at the following examples:

**Example 1:** Convert common fraction  $\frac{9}{4}$  to decimal.

**Solution:**

$$\begin{array}{r} 2.25 \\ 4 \overline{)9.00} \\ \underline{-8} \phantom{0} \\ 10 \\ \underline{-8} \\ 20 \\ \underline{-20} \\ 0 \end{array}$$

$\therefore$

$$\frac{9}{4} = 2.25$$

**Example 2:** Convert common fraction  $\frac{1}{9}$  to decimal.

**Solution:**

$$\begin{array}{r} 0.1111\dots \\ 9 \overline{) 1.0000} \\ \underline{-9} \phantom{000} \\ 10 \phantom{00} \\ \underline{-9} \phantom{00} \\ 10 \phantom{0} \\ \underline{-9} \\ 10 \\ \underline{-9} \\ 1 \end{array}$$

$$\therefore \frac{1}{9} = 0.1111\dots \text{ (terminating/repeating)}$$

### Non Terminating decimal fractions

The decimal fraction in which the number of digits after the decimal point is infinite or while converting a rational number into the decimal fraction, the division process does not end, then it is called a non-terminating/non-repeating decimal fraction.

It can be explained through the following example:

**Example 3:** Convert common fraction  $\frac{9}{7}$  to decimal.

**Solution:**

$$\begin{array}{r} 1.285714\dots \\ 7 \overline{) 9.000000} \\ \underline{-7} \phantom{00000} \\ 20 \phantom{000} \\ \underline{-14} \phantom{000} \\ 60 \phantom{00} \\ \underline{-56} \phantom{00} \\ 40 \phantom{0} \\ \underline{-35} \\ 50 \\ \underline{-49} \\ 10 \\ \underline{-7} \\ 30 \\ \underline{-28} \\ 2 \end{array}$$

$$\therefore \frac{9}{7} = 1.285714\dots$$

We have seen that in Example 1 the decimal 2.25 has terminated/ended after 2 digits and in Example 2, the decimal 0.1111 non terminating but repeating.

Whereas in Example 3, the decimal fraction 1.285714 ... does not end but it goes on forever. The (.....) or the line over decimals indicates that decimal are non-terminating. It may also be noted that none of the digits is being repeated.

So, this type of decimal fraction is known as non-terminating and non-repeating decimal.

### Note that:

The decimals which are non-terminating and non-repeating are called irrational numbers.

## EXERCISE 2.1

1. Convert the following rational numbers into decimal fractions and separate terminating and non-terminating decimals.

(i)  $\frac{5}{7}$                       (ii)  $\frac{3}{5}$                       (iii)  $\frac{6}{7}$

(iv)  $\frac{2}{7}$                       (v)  $\frac{3}{8}$                       (vi)  $\frac{8}{5}$

2. Convert the following rational numbers into decimal fractions and separate repeating and non-repeating decimals.

(i)  $\frac{3}{7}$                       (ii)  $\frac{4}{5}$                       (iii)  $\frac{6}{8}$                       (iv)  $\frac{11}{12}$

(v)  $\frac{1}{7}$                       (vi)  $\frac{8}{9}$                       (vii)  $\frac{25}{8}$                       (viii)  $\frac{22}{7}$

(ix)  $\frac{13}{4}$                       (x)  $\frac{21}{6}$                       (xi)  $\frac{29}{2}$                       (xii)  $\frac{10}{3}$

## 2.2 SQUARES

When a number is multiplied by itself then the product is known as the square of the number i.e, the square of  $x$  is  $x \times x = x^2$

For Example:

$$3 \times 3 = 3^2 = 9$$

Read as square of 3 is 9

Similarly,  $5 \times 5 = 5^2 = 25$

i.e. square of 5 is 25

## 2.2.1 Finding perfect square of a number

A natural number is called a perfect square, if it is the square of another natural number.

e.g, the number 4 is a perfect square because  $4 = 2^2$

Similarly, 25 is a perfect square because  $25 = 5^2$  and so on  
Now, we learn to find a perfect square of a number:

**Example 1:** Find the perfect square of 13

**Solution:**

The perfect square of 13 is  

$$13^2 = 13 \times 13$$

$$= 169$$

**Example 2:** Find the perfect square of 95

**Solution:**

The perfect square of 95 is  

$$(95)^2 = 95 \times 95$$

$$= 9025$$

## 2.2.2 Establish Patterns for the squares of natural numbers

We know that  $4^2 = 4 \times 4 = 16$

We can also write the square of 4 in a Pattern form as

$$4^2 = 1+2+3+4+3+2+1=16$$

Similarly  $5^2 = 1+2+3+4+5+4+3+2+1 = 25$

And  $6^2 = 1+2+3+4+5+6+5+4+3+2+1=36$

So,we observed that the square of any natural number can be found with the help of summation of above patterns.

$1^2$	1	= 1
$2^2$	1 + 2 + 1	= 4
$3^2$	1 + 2 + 3 + 2 + 1	= 9
$4^2$	1 + 2 + 3 + 4 + 3 + 2 + 1	= 16
$5^2$	1 + 2 + 3 + 4 + 5 + 4 + 3 + 2 + 1	= 25
$6^2$	1 + 2 + 3 + 4 + 5 + 6 + 5 + 4 + 3 + 2 + 1	= 36
$7^2$	1 + 2 + 3 + 4 + 5 + 6 + 7 + 6 + 5 + 4 + 3 + 2 + 1	= 49
$8^2$	1 + 2 + 3 + 4 + 5 + 6 + 7 + 8 + 7 + 6 + 5 + 4 + 3 + 2 + 1	= 64
$9^2$	1 + 2 + 3 + 4 + 5 + 6 + 7 + 8 + 9 + 8 + 7 + 6 + 5 + 4 + 3 + 2 + 1	= 81
$10^2$	1 + 2 + 3 + 4 + 5 + 6 + 7 + 8 + 9 + 10 + 9 + 8 + 7 + 6 + 5 + 4 + 3 + 2 + 1	= 100



In the above pattern we notice that:

- (i) Each row starts and ends by digit 1.
- (ii) The digits increase upto the number whose square is required and then decrease.
- (iii) The number of digits in each row increases by 2.
- (iv) The difference of any two consecutive squares is an odd number.
- (v) The number of digits in a particular row is the addition of the number and the previous consecutive numbers whose squares are to be found.

Consider another pattern of squares of natural numbers.

$$\begin{array}{lcl}
 1^2 = 1 & & = 1 \\
 2^2 = 1 + 3 & & = 4 \\
 3^2 = 1 + 3 + 5 & & = 9 \\
 4^2 = 1 + 3 + 5 + 7 & & = 16 \\
 5^2 = 1 + 3 + 5 + 7 + 9 & & = 25 \\
 6^2 = 1 + 3 + 5 + 7 + 9 + 11 & & = 36 \\
 7^2 = 1 + 3 + 5 + 7 + 9 + 11 + 13 & & = 49 \\
 8^2 = 1 + 3 + 5 + 7 + 9 + 11 + 13 + 15 & & = 64 \\
 9^2 = 1 + 3 + 5 + 7 + 9 + 11 + 13 + 15 + 17 & & = 81 \\
 10^2 = 1 + 3 + 5 + 7 + 9 + 11 + 13 + 15 + 17 + 19 & & = 100
 \end{array}$$

We observed the pattern and note that:

- (i) The summation is an ascending order.
- (ii) The square of each number is written as the sum of odd numbers only.
- (iii) Each row of the pattern starts from an odd number 1.
- (iv) The number of odd numbers in each row is equal to the number whose square is to be found.
- (v) The sum of each row is equal to the required square.
- (vi) The last odd number in each row is one less than the double of the given number.

## EXERCISE 2.2

1. Find the perfect square of the following numbers.

$$(i) \ 7 \qquad (ii) \ 11 \qquad (iii) \ 19$$

$$(iv) \ 25 \qquad (v) \ 37 \qquad (vi) \ 75$$

2. Write the summation patterns for the following squares.

$$(i) \ 6^2 \qquad (ii) \ 7^2 \qquad (iii) \ 4^2$$

$$(iv) \ 5^2 \qquad (v) \ 3^2 \qquad (vi) \ 8^2$$

## 2.3 SQUARE ROOT

### 2.3.1 Finding the square root of (a) a natural number (b) a common fraction (c) a decimal given in perfect square form, by prime factorization and division method

The square root of a positive number is that positive number whose square is the given number. The symbol used for square root is  $\sqrt{\quad}$ .

#### (a) Finding square root of a natural number.

##### • By Prime Factorization Method

First of all find prime factors, then make pairs of these factors. Choose one prime number from each pair and then find the product of all those prime factors, which will be the square root of the given number.

**Example 1:** Find the square root of 225

**Solution:**

$$225 = 3 \times 3 \times 5 \times 5$$

$$\begin{aligned}\sqrt{225} &= \sqrt{3 \times 3 \times 5 \times 5} \\ &= 3 \times 5 \\ &= 15 \\ \therefore \sqrt{225} &= 15\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{array}{r} 3 \overline{) 225} \\ \underline{3 \phantom{0} 75} \\ 5 \phantom{0} 25 \\ \underline{5 \phantom{0} 5} \\ 1 \end{array}$$

**Example 2:** Find the square roots of 576

**Solution:**

$$\begin{aligned}576 &= 2 \times 2 \times 2 \times 2 \times 2 \times 2 \times 3 \times 3 \\ \sqrt{576} &= \sqrt{2 \times 2 \times 2 \times 2 \times 2 \times 2 \times 3 \times 3} \\ &= 2 \times 2 \times 2 \times 3 \\ &= 24 \\ \therefore \sqrt{576} &= 24\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{array}{r} 2 \overline{) 576} \\ \underline{2 \phantom{0} 88} \\ 2 \phantom{0} 144 \\ \underline{2 \phantom{0} 72} \\ 2 \phantom{0} 36 \\ \underline{2 \phantom{0} 18} \\ 3 \phantom{0} 9 \\ \underline{3 \phantom{0} 3} \\ 1 \end{array}$$

**Example 3:** Find the square roots of 1600

**Solution:**

$$\begin{aligned}1600 &= 2 \times 2 \times 2 \times 2 \times 2 \times 2 \times 5 \times 5 \\ \sqrt{1600} &= \sqrt{2 \times 2 \times 2 \times 2 \times 2 \times 2 \times 5 \times 5} \\ &= 2 \times 2 \times 2 \times 5 \\ &= 40 \\ \therefore \sqrt{1600} &= 40\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{array}{r} 2 \overline{) 1600} \\ \underline{2 \phantom{0} 800} \\ 2 \phantom{0} 400 \\ \underline{2 \phantom{0} 200} \\ 2 \phantom{0} 100 \\ \underline{2 \phantom{0} 50} \\ 5 \phantom{0} 25 \\ \underline{5 \phantom{0} 5} \\ 1 \end{array}$$

• **By Division Method:**

To find the square root of natural numbers by division method, we will proceed as under:

- (i) Make pairs of digits from right to left. If the number of digits is even, we have complete pairs. If the number of digits is odd, the last digit on extreme left will remain single.
- (ii) Look for the numbers whose square is equal to or less than the number of extreme left, which may be a single digit or a pair. This number will be divisor as well as quotient.

- (iii) Subtract the product. Bring down the next pair to the right of the remainder.
- (iv) Double the quotient and write as divisor as ten's digit.
- (v) Look for the number whose square will be equal or less than the dividend. Write that number with the right side of the quotient as well as with divisor at unit place.

**Example 1:** Find the square root of 625

**Solution:**

$$\begin{array}{r} 25 \\ 2 \overline{) 625} \\ \underline{-4 \phantom{0} 25} \\ 225 \\ \underline{-225} \\ 0 \end{array}$$

$$\therefore \sqrt{625} = 25$$

**Example 2:** Find the square root of 1024

**Solution:**

$$\begin{array}{r} 32 \\ 3 \overline{) 1024} \\ \underline{-9 \phantom{0} 24} \\ 124 \\ \underline{-124} \\ 0 \end{array}$$

$$\therefore \sqrt{1024} = 32$$

**Example 3:** Find the square root of 15129



**Example 2:** Find the square root of  $9\frac{67}{121}$

**Solution:**

$$\begin{array}{r} 9\frac{67}{121} \quad \frac{1156}{121} \\ \text{Now } \sqrt{9\frac{67}{121}} \quad \sqrt{\frac{1156}{121}} \\ \qquad \qquad \qquad \sqrt{1156} \\ \qquad \qquad \qquad \sqrt{121} \\ \qquad \qquad \qquad \frac{34}{11} \\ \qquad \qquad \qquad 3\frac{1}{11} \\ \therefore \sqrt{9\frac{67}{121}} = 3\frac{1}{11} \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{r} 34 \\ \hline 3 \overline{) 1156} \\ \underline{-9} \phantom{00} \\ 256 \\ \underline{-256} \\ 0 \end{array} \quad \begin{array}{r} 11 \\ \hline 1 \overline{) 121} \\ \underline{-1} \phantom{00} \\ 21 \\ \underline{-21} \\ 0 \end{array}$$

### EXERCISE 2.4

1. Find the square root of the following fractions by prime factorization.

(i) $\frac{49}{64}$	(ii) $\frac{121}{625}$	(iii) $\frac{196}{441}$
(iv) $1\frac{13}{36}$	(v) $\frac{676}{729}$	(vi) $12\frac{24}{25}$

2. Find the square root of the following fractions by division method.

(i) $\frac{144}{225}$	(ii) $\frac{169}{256}$	(iii) $\frac{784}{841}$
(iv) $\frac{1024}{1225}$	(v) $5\frac{41}{64}$	(vi) $9\frac{67}{121}$

#### (c) Finding square root of a decimal

##### • By Prime Factorization

We convert the decimal to common fraction and then find square root.

**Example 1:** Find the square root of decimal 0.64

**Solution:**

$$\begin{aligned} 0.64 &= \frac{64}{100} \\ \text{Now } \sqrt{\frac{64}{100}} &= \frac{\sqrt{64}}{\sqrt{100}} \\ &= \frac{\sqrt{2 \times 2 \times 2 \times 2 \times 2 \times 2}}{\sqrt{2 \times 2 \times 5 \times 5}} \\ &= \frac{\sqrt{2 \times 2 \times 2 \times 2 \times 2 \times 2}}{\sqrt{2 \times 2 \times 5 \times 5}} \\ &= \frac{2 \times 2 \times 2}{2 \times 5} = \frac{8}{10} \\ &= 0.8 \\ \therefore \sqrt{0.64} &= 0.8 \end{aligned}$$

**Example 2:** Find the square root of decimal 2.25

**Solution:**

$$\begin{aligned} 2.25 &= \frac{225}{100} \\ \sqrt{\frac{225}{100}} &= \frac{\sqrt{225}}{\sqrt{100}} = \frac{\sqrt{3 \times 3 \times 5 \times 5}}{\sqrt{2 \times 2 \times 5 \times 5}} \\ &= \frac{\sqrt{3 \times 3 \times 5 \times 5}}{\sqrt{2 \times 2 \times 5 \times 5}} \\ &= \frac{3 \times 5}{2 \times 5} = \frac{15}{10} \\ &= 1.5 \\ \therefore \sqrt{2.25} &= 1.5 \end{aligned}$$



**By Division Method:**

For using this method the following steps will be taken.

- (i) Make pairs of digits on the left side of the decimal point from right to left.
- (ii) Make pairs of digits on the right side of the decimal point from left to right.
- (iii) Place the decimal point in the quotient while bringing down the pair after the decimal point.
- (iv) While bringing down two pairs at a time, place a zero in the quotient.

This method is illustrated with the following examples.

**Example 1:** Find the square root of 180.9025

**Solution:**

$$\begin{array}{r}
 13.45 \\
 \hline
 1 \overline{) 180.9025} \\
 \underline{1} \phantom{00} \phantom{.} \phantom{0} \phantom{2} \phantom{5} \\
 80 \phantom{.} \phantom{0} \phantom{2} \phantom{5} \\
 \underline{-69} \phantom{.} \phantom{0} \phantom{2} \phantom{5} \\
 11.90 \phantom{2} \phantom{5} \\
 \underline{-10.56} \phantom{2} \phantom{5} \\
 1.3425 \\
 \underline{-1.3425} \\
 0
 \end{array}$$

$\therefore \sqrt{180.9025} = 13.45$

**Example 2:** Find the square root of 0.053361

**Solution:**

$$\begin{array}{r}
 0.231 \\
 \hline
 .2 \overline{) 0.053361} \\
 \underline{-0.04} \phantom{00} \phantom{00} \phantom{00} \phantom{00} \\
 0.0133 \phantom{00} \phantom{00} \phantom{00} \\
 \underline{-0.0129} \phantom{00} \phantom{00} \phantom{00} \\
 0.000461 \\
 \underline{-0.000461} \\
 0
 \end{array}$$

$\therefore \sqrt{0.053361} = 0.231$

$$\begin{array}{l}
 1 \times 21 = 21 \\
 2 \times 22 = 44 \\
 3 \times 23 = 69 \\
 4 \times 24 = 96
 \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{l}
 1 \times 261 = 261 \\
 2 \times 262 = 524 \\
 3 \times 263 = 789 \\
 4 \times 264 = 1056 \\
 5 \times 265 = 1325
 \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{l}
 1 \times 2621 = 2681 \\
 2 \times 2682 = 5364 \\
 3 \times 2683 = 8049 \\
 4 \times 2684 = 10736 \\
 5 \times 2685 = 13425
 \end{array}$$

**Example 3:** Find the square root of decimal 152.7696

**Solution:**

$$\begin{array}{r}
 12.36 \\
 \hline
 1 \overline{) 152.7696} \\
 \underline{-1} \phantom{00} \phantom{.} \phantom{0} \phantom{0} \phantom{0} \phantom{0} \\
 52 \phantom{.} \phantom{0} \phantom{0} \phantom{0} \phantom{0} \phantom{0} \\
 \underline{-44} \phantom{.} \phantom{0} \phantom{0} \phantom{0} \phantom{0} \phantom{0} \\
 8.76 \phantom{0} \phantom{0} \phantom{0} \phantom{0} \\
 \underline{-7.29} \phantom{0} \phantom{0} \phantom{0} \phantom{0} \\
 1.4796 \\
 \underline{-1.4796} \\
 0
 \end{array}$$

$\therefore \sqrt{152.7696} = 12.36$

**EXERCISE 2.5**

1. Find the square root of the following decimals by prime factorization.

- (i) 1.21
- (ii) 0.64
- (iii) 7.29

- (iv) 1.44
- (v) 1.69
- (vi) 12.25

2. Find the square root of the following decimals by division method.

- (i) 0.3249
- (ii) 0.5184
- (iii) 10.24

- (iv) 20.5209
- (v) 648.7209
- (vi) 2981.16

- (vii) 7613.609536
- (viii) 0.00868624
- (ix) 2374.6129

**2.3.2 Find square root of a number which is not a perfect square.**

**Example 1:** Find the square root of 2 upto 3 decimal places.

**Solution:**

	1.414	2.000000
1		-1.↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
2.4		1.00
		-0.96 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
2.81		0.0400
		-0.0281 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
2.824		0.011900
		-0.011296
		0.000604
		.....
		.....

∴  $\sqrt{2} = 1.414$

We observe that:

The process is non-terminating, so we cannot get zero as remainder. In the quotient after the decimal point there is no group of integers which is repeating itself as in the case of rational numbers.

$\frac{2}{3} = 0.666,$        $\frac{22}{7} = 3.142857142857$

**Remember that:**

If we cannot find the number whose square is  $x$ , then  $\sqrt{x}$  is an irrational number.

**Example 2:** Find the square root of 2.5 upto two decimal places.

**Solution:**

	1.58	2.500000
1		-1.↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
2.5		1.50
		-1.25 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
3.08		0.2500
		-0.2464 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
		0.003600
		.....
		.....

∴  $\sqrt{2.5} \cong 1.58$

**Example 3:** Find the square root of 0.257960 upto three decimal places.

**Solution:**

	0.507	2.257960
.5		-0.25 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
1.007		0.007960
		-0.007049
		0.000911
		.....
		.....

∴  $\sqrt{0.257960} \cong 0.507$

**EXERCISE 2.6**

1. Find the square root of the following upto three decimal places.

- |        |        |         |
|--------|--------|---------|
| (i) 2  | (ii) 3 | (iii) 5 |
| (iv) 7 | (v) 11 | (vi) 15 |

2. Find the square root of the following upto two decimal places.

- (i) 3.6                      (ii) 6.4                      (iii) 28.9  
 (iv) 63.34                      (v) 816.081                      (vi) 36.008

### 2.3.3 Use the Rule to Determine the Number of Digits in the Square Root of a Perfect Square

**Rule:** Let  $n$  be the number of digits in the perfect square then its square root contains:

- (i)  $\frac{n}{2}$  digits if  $n$  is even  
 (ii)  $\frac{n+1}{2}$  digits if  $n$  is odd

Now we apply the above rule for finding the number of digits in the square root of a perfect square with the help of following examples:

**Example 1:** Find the number of digits in the square root of 49729

**Solution:**

Number of digits of the given number = 5  
 $n = 5$  is odd, so mentioned above rule (ii) will be applied

$\therefore$  Thus the number of digits in the square root will be  $= \frac{n+1}{2} = \frac{5+1}{2} = \frac{6}{2} = 3$

$\therefore$  To check the answer, we proceed as under

$$\begin{array}{r}
 223 \\
 \overline{)49729} \\
 \underline{4} \phantom{00} \\
 97 \phantom{00} \\
 \underline{84} \phantom{00} \\
 1329 \\
 \underline{1329} \\
 0
 \end{array}$$

$$\therefore \sqrt{49729} = 223$$

The square root 223 has 3 digits

**Example 2:** Find the number of digits in the square root of 10329796

**Solution:**

Number of digits ( $n$ ) = 8

Now  $n = 8$  is even, so part (i) of the rule will be applied

$\therefore$  The number of digits in the square root  $= \frac{n}{2} = \frac{8}{2} = 4$   
 Now, we can verify it

$$\begin{array}{r}
 3214 \\
 \overline{)10329796} \\
 \underline{9} \phantom{0000} \\
 132 \phantom{0000} \\
 \underline{124} \phantom{0000} \\
 897 \phantom{0000} \\
 \underline{641} \phantom{0000} \\
 25696 \\
 \underline{25696} \\
 0
 \end{array}$$

$$\therefore \sqrt{10329796} = 3214$$

The square root 3214 has 4 digits

### EXERCISE 2.7

1. Find the number of digits in the square root of the following perfect square

- (i) 63504                      (ii) 66564                      (iii) 50625  
 (iv) 837225                      (v) 839056                      (vi) 1054729  
 (vii) 1577536                      (viii) 2119936                      (ix) 3283344  
 (x) 614656                      (xi) 7778521                      (xii) 12880921

### 2.3.4 Real Life Problems Involving Square Root

**Example 1:** 1225 students stand in rows in such a way that the number of rows is equal to the number of students in a row. How many students are there in each row?

**Solution:**

Since the number of students in a row is the same as the number of rows, square root of 1225 will be found.

$$\begin{array}{r} 35 \\ 3 \overline{) 1225} \\ \underline{-9} \phantom{0} \\ 325 \\ \underline{-325} \\ 0 \end{array}$$

Thus, the number of students in each row = 35

**Example 2:** A rectangular field has an area of 18432 square meters. Its width is half as long as its length. Find its perimeter.

**Solution:**

Since the width of the field is half as long as its length, this rectangle can be divided into two square regions.

$$\therefore \text{The area of each square region} = \frac{18432}{2} = 9216 \text{ m}^2$$

To find the length of its side, we will find the square root of 9216.

$$\begin{array}{r} 96 \\ 9 \overline{) 9216} \\ \underline{-81} \phantom{0} \\ 1116 \\ \underline{-1116} \\ 0 \end{array}$$

$\therefore$  The width of each side (width) 96 meters.

So the length of the rectangle =  $96 \times 2 = 192$  meters.

Thus the perimeter =  $2(192 + 96) = 2(288) = 576$  meters.

**Example 3:** Find the least number which, when subtracted from 58780, the answer is a complete square.

**Solution:**

To find which number is subtracted from the given number, we find the square root of 58780 and the remainder will be the required number.

$$\begin{array}{r} 242 \\ 2 \overline{) 58780} \\ \underline{-4} \phantom{00} \\ 187 \phantom{0} \\ \underline{-176} \phantom{0} \\ 1180 \\ \underline{-964} \\ 216 \end{array}$$

Remaining Number = Given number – Remainder =  $58780 - 216 = 58564$

Thus, if 216 is subtracted from 58780, the remaining number 58564 will be a complete square.

**EXERCISE 2.8**

- The area of a square field is 14400 sq. meter. Find the length of the side of the square.
- The area of a square field is 422500 sq. meter. How much string is required for fixing along the sides as a fence?
- A gardener wants to plant 122500 trees in his field in such a way that the number of trees in a row is equal to the number of rows. How many trees will he plant in each row?
- The area of a rectangular field is 10092 sq. meter. Its length is three times as long as its width. Find its perimeter.
- The area of a circular region is 616 sq. decimeter. Find its radius.  $(\pi \approx \frac{22}{7})$
- A rectangular field has an area 28800 sq. meter. Its length is twice as long as its width. What is the length of its sides?
- Find that least number which, when subtracted from 109087, the answer is a complete square.



8. The cost of levelling the ground of a circular region at a rate of Rs.2 per square meter is Rs.4928. Find the radius of the ground.
9. The cost of ploughing in a square field is Rs.2450 at the rate of Rs.2 per 10 sq. meters. Find the length of the side of the square.
10. A square lawn area is 62500 sq. meter. A wooden fence is to be laid around the lawn. How long wooden fence is required? What will be its cost at the rate of Rs.50 per meter?

## 2.4 CUBES AND CUBE ROOTS

### 2.4.1 Recognition of cubes and perfect cubes

- **Cubes**

Cube of a number means to multiply the number by itself three times. Let  $x$  be any number then,  $x \times x \times x = x^3$

For example  $2 \times 2 \times 2 = 2^3$

$$3 \times 3 \times 3 = 3^3$$

$$4 \times 4 \times 4 = 4^3 \text{ and so on}$$

- **Perfect cubes**

Perfect cube is a number that is the result of multiplying an integer by itself three times. In other words it is an integer to the third power of another integer.

**Example 1:** Show that 8,27 and 216 are perfect cubes.

**Solution:**

$$8 = 2 \times 2 \times 2 = 2^3$$

8 is a perfect cube of 2

$$27 = 3 \times 3 \times 3 = 3^3$$

27 is a perfect cube of 3

$$216 = 2 \times 2 \times 2 \times 3 \times 3 \times 3$$

$$= 2^3 \times 3^3$$

$$= (2 \times 3)^3 = 6^3$$

$\therefore$  216 is a perfect cube of 6

**Example 2:** Find cube of 1.2

**Solution:**

$$(1.2)^3 = (1.2) \times (1.2) \times (1.2)$$

$$= (1.44) \times (1.2)$$

$$= 1.728$$

### 2.4.2 Finding cube Roots of numbers which are perfect cubes

In mathematics a cube root of a number, denoted by  $x^{1/3}$ , is a number such that  $a^3 = x$ .  
i.e.  $a = x^{1/3}$

Symbol of cube root is  $\sqrt[3]{\quad}$  Remember that 3 is the part of the symbol

**Example 1:** Find the cube root of 125

**Solution:**

$$125 = 5 \times 5 \times 5 = 5^3$$

$$\sqrt[3]{125} = \sqrt[3]{5 \times 5 \times 5}$$

$$= (5^3)^{1/3}$$

$$= 5$$

$$\begin{array}{r|l} 5 & 125 \\ \hline 5 & 25 \\ 5 & 5 \\ \hline & 1 \end{array}$$

**Example 2:** Find the cube root of 9261

**Solution:**

$$9261 = 3 \times 3 \times 3 \times 7 \times 7 \times 7$$

$$= 3^3 \times 7^3$$

$$\therefore \sqrt[3]{9261} = \sqrt[3]{3^3 \times 7^3}$$

$$= (3^3 \times 7^3)^{1/3}$$

$$= (3^3)^{1/3} \times (7^3)^{1/3}$$

$$= 3 \times 7$$

$$= 21$$

$$\begin{array}{r|l} 3 & 9261 \\ \hline 3 & 3087 \\ 3 & 1029 \\ 7 & 343 \\ 7 & 49 \\ 7 & 7 \\ \hline & 1 \end{array}$$

### 2.4.3 Recognition of Properties of Cubes of numbers

- (i) Cube of a positive number is + ve. e.g.  $3^3 = 27$   
(ii) Cube of a (negative) number is negative.  
e.g.  $(-4)^3 = -64$   
(iii) Cube of an even number is even. e.g.  $6^3 = 216$   
(iv) Cube of an odd number is odd. e.g.  $7^3 = 343$   
(v) Cube of distributive properties under (a) multiplication and (b) division

$$(a) (5 \times 7)^3 = 5^3 \times 7^3 \qquad (b) \left(\frac{5}{7}\right)^3 = \frac{5^3}{7^3}$$

- (vi) Cube number form the perfect cubes  
 $6^3 = 216$ ,  $4^3 = 64$ ,  $8^3 = 512$   
So 216, 64 and 512 are perfect cubes.

#### EXERCISE 2.9

- Which are the perfect cubes?  
(i) 512      (ii) 1100      (iii) 6859  
(iv)  $\frac{27}{512}$       (v)  $\frac{64}{216}$
- Find the cube roots of the following:  
(i) 729      (ii) 15625      (iii) 13824
- Find the cubes of the following:  
(i) 1.4      (ii) 0.4      (iii) 0.8
- Find the cubes of the following:  
(i)  $\frac{27}{216}$       (ii) 35937      (iii) 3375

### REVIEW EXERCISE 2

- Four options are given below each statement. Encircle the correct one.
- Find the number of digits in the square root of the following numbers. Also find the square root.  
(a) 418609      (b) 30349081      (c) 10329796
- Find the square root of the following:  
(a)  $28\frac{4}{9}$       (b)  $17\frac{128}{289}$       (c)  $101\frac{92}{169}$   
(d) 0.053361      (e) 0.204304      (f) 152.7696  
(g) 0.25694      (h) 38.01      (i) 64.31
- If the area of a square field is  $161604 m^2$ , find the length of its one side.
- Saeeda has 196 marbles that she is using to make a square formation. How many marbles should be in each row?
- Find the cube root of the following numbers.  
(a) 1728      (b) 3375      (c)  $\frac{216}{125}$

#### SUMMARY

- The number which cannot be written in the form of  $\frac{p}{q}$  where  $p, q \in Z$  and  $q \neq 0$  is called irrational number.
- Set of Real Numbers is the union of Rational and Irrational Numbers i.e.  $R = Q \cup Q'$
- A number whose decimal representation is terminating and non-recurring is called an irrational number.

- The decimal fraction in which the number after the decimal point is finite, is called terminating decimal fraction.
- The decimal fraction, in which the number after the decimal point is infinite, is called non-terminating.
- The product of a number by itself is known as square.
- The square root of a positive number is that positive number whose square is the given number.
- Cube of a number means to multiply the number by itself three times.

CHAPTER

3

# Number Systems

*Animation 3.1: Number Systems*  
*Source & Credit: elearn.punjab*

---



### 3.1 NUMBER SYSTEMS

Any number can be formed with the help of 10 digits

*i.e.*, 0,1,2, 3,4, 5, 6, 7, 8 and 9.

These numbers are called numerals and these numerals are known as 'Arabic numerals'.

#### 3.1.1 Base of a Number System:

The number of digits involved in a number system is called the base of that number system. If a number system involves only two digits 0, 1, then base is 2. A number system, in which 10 digits 0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8 and 9 are used, is a system with base 10.

Similarly, a number system in which five digits 0,1, 2, 3 and 4 are used is a system with base 5.

#### 3.1.2 To Define Number System with Base 2,5,8 and 10:

##### (a) Number System with Base 2:

A number system formed by two digits 0, 1 is called **Binary system** and its base is 2. This system is not used in everyday life apparently. But it is very important number system because it is used in all types of computers. Because computer stores information in the form of binary numbers so the binary system is of primary importance in the modern age of computer.

##### (b) Number System with Base 5:

This number system involves digits 0, 1, 2, 3 and 4. The largest digit in base 5 system is 4.

##### (c) Number System with Base 8:

The number system with base 8 is called octal system. In this system eight digits 0,1,2, 3, 4, 5, 6 and 7 are used. The largest digit in base 8 system is 7.

##### (d) Decimal Number System:

Decimal number system is the most popular number system in the world. In this system, ten digits (0 to 9) are used. Every number can be expressed as the sum of multiples of powers of 10 and 10 is called its base.

### 3.2 CONVERSIONS:

The above discussed number systems are all place value number systems. The numbers used in these systems can be converted from one system to another system. The method of successive division is used to convert a number from one system to another system. The division is performed by the base of the system in which it is being converted.

#### 3.2.1(a) Conversion from Decimal Number System to Other Number Systems:

##### (i) Conversion from Decimal to Binary System:

**Example 1:** Convert 15 into an equivalent number with base 2

**Solution:**

$$\begin{array}{r|l}
 2 & 15 \\
 \hline
 2 & 7 - 1 \uparrow \\
 \hline
 2 & 3 - 1 \\
 \hline
 & 1 - 1 \rightarrow
 \end{array}
 \quad 15 = (1111)_2$$

The number  $(1111)_2$  will be read as one, one, one, one base 2

**Example 2:** Convert 541 into binary system.

**Solution:**

$$\begin{array}{r|l}
 2 & 541 \\
 \hline
 2 & 270 - 1 \uparrow \\
 \hline
 2 & 135 - 0 \\
 \hline
 2 & 67 - 1 \\
 \hline
 2 & 33 - 1 \\
 \hline
 2 & 16 - 1 \\
 \hline
 2 & 8 - 0 \\
 \hline
 2 & 4 - 0 \\
 \hline
 2 & 2 - 0 \\
 \hline
 & 1 - 0 \rightarrow
 \end{array}$$

Thus,  $541 = (1000011101)_2$

**(ii) Conversion from Decimal System to a Number with Base 5:**

Any number of decimal system can be converted into an equivalent number with base 5 as follows.

**Example 1:** Convert 17 into an equivalent number with base 5

**Solution:**

$$\begin{array}{r|l} 5 & 17 \\ \hline & 3-2 \end{array}$$

Thus,  $17 = (32)_5$

**Example 2:** Convert 89651 into an equivalent number with base 5

**Solution:**

$$\begin{array}{r|l} 5 & 89651 \\ \hline 5 & 17930 - 1 \uparrow \\ 5 & 3586 - 0 \\ 5 & 717 - 1 \\ 5 & 143 - 2 \\ 5 & 28 - 3 \\ 5 & 5 - 3 \\ & 1 - 0 \end{array}$$

Thus,  $89751 = (10332101)_5$

**(iii) Conversion from Decimal to Octal System (Base 8)**

**Example 1:** Convert 824 into an equivalent number with base 8

**Solution:**

$$\begin{array}{r|l} 8 & 824 \\ \hline 8 & 103 - 0 \uparrow \\ 8 & 12 - 7 \\ & 1 - 4 \end{array}$$

Hence,  $824 = (1470)_8$

**Example 2:** Convert 4837 into an equivalent number with base 8

**Solution:**

$$\begin{array}{r|l} 8 & 4837 \\ \hline 8 & 604 - 5 \uparrow \\ 8 & 75 - 4 \\ 8 & 9 - 3 \\ 8 & 1 - 1 \end{array}$$

Hence,  $4837 = (11345)_8$

**3.2.1(b) Conversion from other Number Systems to Decimal Number System:****(i) Conversion from Binary System to Decimal System:**

For converting a number written in binary system into a number in decimal system, consider the following example.

**Example:** Convert  $(1101)_2$  into equivalent number in decimal system.

**Solution:**

$$\begin{aligned} (1101)_2 &= 1 \times 2^3 + 1 \times 2^2 + 0 \times 2^1 + 1 \times 2^0 \\ &= 8 + 4 + 0 + 1 = 13 \end{aligned}$$

**(ii) Converting a Number written in Base 5 System into Decimal System:**

Any number in base 5 system can be converted into base 10 system. For converting a number in base 5 into an equivalent number with base 10, consider the following example.

**Example:** Convert  $(413242)_5$  into equivalent decimal system.

**Solution:**

$$\begin{aligned} (413242)_5 &= 4 \times 5^5 + 1 \times 5^4 + 3 \times 5^3 + 2 \times 5^2 + 4 \times 5^1 + 2 \times 5^0 \\ &= 4 \times 3125 + 1 \times 625 + 3 \times 125 + 2 \times 25 + 4 \times 5 + 2 \times 1 \\ &= 12500 + 625 + 375 + 50 + 20 + 2 \\ &= 13572 \end{aligned}$$

**(iii) Conversion from Octal System to Decimal System:**

Consider the following examples.

**Example:** Write the following octal numbers as decimal numbers.

(i)  $(126)_8$                       (ii)  $(424002)_8$

**Solution:**

(i)  $(126)_8$   
 $(126)_8 = 1 \times 8^2 + 2 \times 8^1 + 6 \times 8^0$   
 $= 1 \times 64 + 2 \times 8 + 6 \times 1$   
 $= 64 + 16 + 6 = 86$

(ii)  $(424002)_8 = 4 \times 8^5 + 2 \times 8^4 + 4 \times 8^3 + 0 \times 8^2 + 0 \times 8^1 + 2 \times 8^0$   
 $= 4 \times 32768 + 2 \times 4096 + 4 \times 512 + 0 + 0 + 2 \times 1$   
 $= 131072 + 8192 + 2048 + 0 + 0 + 2$   
 $= 141314$

**EXERCISE 3.1**

1. Convert the following into decimal system.

(i)  $(101)_2$                       (ii)  $(2044)_5$                       (iii)  $(1101110)_2$

(iv)  $(7016)_8$                       (v)  $(2360)_8$                       (vi)  $(1011010100)_2$

(vii)  $(1001001)_2$                       (viii)  $(3100)_5$

2. Convert the following into the base system as indicated against each question.

(i) 3025 to binary, octal and base 5                      (ii)  $(671)_8$  to binary and base 5

(iii)  $(2006)_8$  to binary and base 5

(iv) 867 to binary, octal and base 5

(v)  $(10011001)$  to octal and base 5

**3.2.2 Adding, Subtracting and Multiplying Numbers with Base 2:****(a) Binary Number System (Base 2):**

**Addition:** We know that in the binary number system only two digits 0 and 1 are used.

While adding, if the sum is greater than 1 then, divide the sum by 2, write the remainder and carry quotient to the next digit.

The following addition table is helpful in finding the sums in the number system with base 2.

**Addition Table for Binary System**

+	0	1
0	0	1
1	1	$(10)_2$

**Example 1:** Find the sum of  $(111)_2$  and  $(10)_2$ .

**Solution:**

We have  $(111)_2 + (10)_2 = (1001)_2$  in the horizontal form.

In the vertical form, we write

$$\begin{array}{r} (111)_2 \\ + (10)_2 \\ \hline (1001)_2 \end{array}$$

In the second column  $1 + 1 = 2$  and so we carry 1 to the third column and in binary system 2 is written as  $(10)_2$ .

**Example 2:** Solve:  $(10110111)_2 + (100011)_2$

**Solution:**

$(10110111)_2 + (100011)_2 = (11011010)_2$  in the horizontal form.

In the vertical form, we write

$$\begin{array}{r} (10110111)_2 \\ + (100011)_2 \\ \hline (11011010)_2 \end{array}$$

**Subtraction:**

**Example 1:** Find:  $(101)_2 - (11)_2$

**Solution:**

$$\begin{array}{r} \textcircled{2} \\ (1\ 0\ 1)_2 \\ - (1\ 1)_2 \\ \hline (1\ 0)_2 \end{array}$$

In decimal system we borrow one "10" from the next column for subtracting a greater number from smaller number. Similarly, in binary system we borrow one "2" from the next column. In the 2nd column 1 cannot be subtracted from 0, so we borrow 1 from third column.

**Example 2:** Subtract  $(1101)_2$  from  $(10011)_2$ **Solution:**

$$\begin{array}{r} \textcircled{1} \textcircled{2} \textcircled{2} \\ (1\ 0\ 0\ 1\ 1)_2 \\ - (1\ 1\ 0\ 1)_2 \\ \hline (1\ 1\ 0)_2 \end{array}$$

**Multiplication:**

The numbers having base 2, we use the following multiplication table.

**Multiplication Table (Base 2)**

x	0	1
0	0	0
1	0	1

**Example 1:** Multiply  $(11)_2$  by  $(10)_2$ **Solution:**

$$\begin{array}{r} (1\ 1)_2 \\ - (1\ 0)_2 \\ \hline (0\ 0)_2 \\ (1\ 1\ 0)_2 \\ \hline (1\ 1\ 0)_2 \end{array}$$

**Example 1:** Solve:  $(11011011)_2 \times (10101)_2$ **Solution:**

$$\begin{array}{r} (1\ 1\ 0\ 1\ 1\ 0\ 1)_2 \\ \times (1\ 0\ 1\ 0\ 1)_2 \\ \hline (1\ 1\ 0\ 1\ 1\ 0\ 1\ 1)_2 \\ (0\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 0)_2 \\ (1\ 1\ 0\ 1\ 1\ 0\ 1\ 1\ 0\ 0)_2 \\ (0\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 0)_2 \\ (1\ 1\ 0\ 1\ 1\ 0\ 1\ 1\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 0)_2 \\ \hline (1\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 1\ 1\ 1\ 1\ 1\ 0\ 1\ 1\ 1)_2 \end{array}$$

**(b) Base 5 Number System:****Addition:**

While adding, if the sum of two or more digits is greater than 5, divide the sum by 5, write the remainder and carry the quotient to the next digit.

The following addition table will be helpful in finding the sums in the number system with base 5.

**Addition Table for base 5**

+	0	1	2	3	4
0	0	1	2	3	4
1	1	2	3	4	10
2	2	3	4	10	11
3	3	4	10	11	12
4	4	10	11	12	13

The process of addition is explained by the following examples.

**Example 1:** Solve:  $(4)_5 + (3)_5$ **Solution:**

$4 + 3 = 7$  and in the system with base 5, 7 is represented by  $(12)_5$ . So,  $(4)_5 + (3)_5 = (12)_5$ .

**Example 2:** Find the sum of  $(12433)_5$  and  $(31243)_5$

**Solution:**

$$\begin{array}{r} \textcircled{1} \textcircled{1} \textcircled{1} \\ (1\ 2\ 4\ 3\ 3)_5 \\ + (3\ 1\ 2\ 4\ 3)_5 \\ \hline (4\ 4\ 2\ 3\ 1)_5 \end{array}$$

**Subtraction:**

**Example:** Find:  $(3421)_5 - (2143)_5$

**Solution:**

$$\begin{array}{r} \textcircled{5} \\ \textcircled{3} \textcircled{1} \textcircled{5} \\ (3\ 4\ 2\ 1)_5 \\ - (2\ 1\ 4\ 3)_5 \\ \hline (1\ 2\ 2\ 3)_5 \end{array}$$

To subtract 3 from 1 is not possible so borrow a "5" from the second column and add it to the 1st column i.e.  $5 + 1 = 6$  and then subtract 3 from 6.

In the 2<sup>nd</sup> column "1" is left behind. Now 4 cannot be subtracted from 1. Again borrow a "5" from the 3<sup>rd</sup> column and add it to the second column i.e.,  $5 + 1 = 6$  and  $6 - 4 = 2$ . After borrowing 1, 3 is left in the 3<sup>rd</sup> column and so  $3 - 1 = 2$ .

**Multiplication:**

For multiplying the number having base 5, the following multiplication table is useful

**Multiplication Table (Base 5)**

x	0	1	2	3	4
0	0	0	0	0	0
1	0	1	2	3	4
2	0	2	4	11	13
3	0	3	11	14	22
4	0	4	13	22	31

**Example:** Multiply  $(23)_5$  by  $(14)_5$

**Solution:**

$$\begin{array}{r} \textcircled{2} \\ (2\ 3)_5 \\ \times (1\ 4)_5 \\ \hline (2\ 0\ 2)_5 \\ (2\ 3\ 0)_5 \\ \hline (4\ 3\ 2)_5 \end{array}$$

Since  $4 \times 3 = 12$ , divide 12 by 5, carry the quotient 2 and write down the remainder 2.  
Similarly  $4 \times 2 = 8$ , add 2 already carried then divide 10 by 5, carry the quotient 2 and write down the remainder 0.

**Example 2:** Solve:  $(421)_5 \times (234)_5$

**Solution:**

$$\begin{array}{r} \textcircled{1} \textcircled{2} \quad \textcircled{1} \\ \downarrow \downarrow \downarrow \downarrow \\ (4\ 2\ 1)_5 \\ \times (2\ 3\ 4)_5 \\ \hline (3\ 2\ 3\ 4)_5 \\ (2\ 3\ 1\ 3\ 0)_5 \\ (1\ 3\ 4\ 2\ 0\ 0)_5 \\ \hline (2\ 2\ 1\ 1\ 1\ 4)_5 \end{array}$$

**(c) Octal Number System (Base 8)**

**Addition:**

In octal number system, we start counting from 0 and proceed to 7. We add one more unit in 7, we get eight which is written as:

$$7 + 1 = (10)_8$$

It is read as, one zero with base 8

**Example:** Add the following octal numbers.

**(i)**  $(6)_8 + (7)_8$

**(ii)**  $(64)_8 + (44)_8$

**(iii)**  $(255636)_8 + (143576)_8$



**Solution:**

**(i)**  $(6)_8 + (7)_8$

Write  $(6)_8 + (7)_8$  in the vertical form.

$$\begin{array}{r} (6)_8 \\ + (7)_8 \\ \hline (15)_8 \end{array}$$

Thus,  $(6)_8 + (7)_8 = (15)_8$

**(ii)**  $(64)_8 + (44)_8$

Write  $(64)_8 + (44)_8$  in the vertical form.

$$\begin{array}{r} \textcircled{1} \\ (64)_8 \\ + (44)_8 \\ \hline (130)_8 \end{array}$$

Thus,  $(64)_8 + (44)_8 = (130)_8$

**(iii)**  $(255636)_8 + (143576)_8$

Write  $(255636)_8 + (143576)_8$  in the vertical form.

$$\begin{array}{r} \textcircled{1}\textcircled{1}\textcircled{1}\textcircled{1}\textcircled{1} \\ (255636)_8 \\ + (143576)_8 \\ \hline (421434)_8 \end{array}$$

Thus,  $(255636)_8 + (143576)_8 = (421434)_8$

**Subtraction:****Example:** Evaluate the following:

**(i)**  $(14)_8 - (6)_8$

**(ii)**  $(604)_8 - (247)_8$

**(iii)**  $(455122)_8 - (216634)_8$

**Solution:**

**(i)**  $(14)_8 - (6)_8$

Write  $(14)_8 - (6)_8$  in the vertical form.

$$\begin{array}{r} (14)_8 \\ - (6)_8 \\ \hline (6)_8 \end{array}$$

Thus,  $(14)_8 - (6)_8 = (6)_8$

**(ii)**  $(604)_8 - (247)_8$

Write  $(604)_8 - (247)_8$  in the vertical form.

$$\begin{array}{r} (604)_8 \\ - (247)_8 \\ \hline (335)_8 \end{array}$$

Thus,  $(604)_8 - (247)_8 = (335)_8$

**(iii)**  $(455122)_8 - (216634)_8$

Write  $(455122)_8 - (216634)_8$  in the vertical form.

$$\begin{array}{r} (455122)_8 \\ - (216634)_8 \\ \hline (236266)_8 \end{array}$$

Thus,  $(455122)_8 - (216634)_8 = (236266)_8$

**Multiplication:****Example:** Multiply

**(i)**  $(36)_8 \times (43)_8$

**(ii)**  $(446)_8 \times (213)_8$

**Solution:**

**(i)**  $(36)_8 \times (43)_8$

Write  $(36)_8 \times (43)_8$  in the vertical form.

$$\begin{array}{r} \textcircled{3} \\ \textcircled{2} \\ (36)_8 \\ \times (43)_8 \\ \hline (132)_8 \\ (1700)_8 \\ \hline (2032)_8 \end{array}$$

Thus,  $(36)_8 \times (43)_8 = (2032)_8$

(ii)  $(446)_8 \times (213)_8$ Write  $(446)_8 \times (213)_8$  in the vertical form.

$$\begin{array}{r}
 \textcircled{1} \textcircled{1} \\
 \textcircled{1} \textcircled{2} \\
 (446)_8 \\
 \times (213)_8 \\
 \hline
 (1562)_8 \\
 (4460)_8 \\
 (111400)_8 \\
 \hline
 (117642)_8
 \end{array}$$

Thus,  $(446)_8 \times (213)_8 = (117642)_8$ 

### 3.2.3 Adding, Subtracting and Multiplying Numbers with Different Bases

As we are familiar in our daily life with decimal number system so, in order to perform arithmetic operations on numbers with different bases (2, 5, 8 or 10), we first convert all the numbers into the decimal system and perform the given operations. Then the answer can be converted into base 2, 5 and 8 as required.

**Example 1:** Find:  $(100111)_2 + (4123)_5 + 567$  and express the answer in all the three number systems, (i.e., in the number system with bases 2, 5 and 10)

**Solution:**

We convert both  $(100111)_2$  and  $(4123)_5$  into decimal system.

$$\begin{aligned}
 (100111)_2 &= 1 \times 2^5 + 0 \times 2^4 + 0 \times 2^3 + 1 \times 2^2 + 1 \times 2^1 + 1 \times 2^0 \\
 &= 32 + 0 + 0 + 4 + 2 + 1 = 39
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 (4123)_5 &= 4 \times 5^3 + 1 \times 5^2 + 2 \times 5^1 + 3 \times 5^0 \\
 &= 500 + 25 + 10 + 3 = 538
 \end{aligned}$$

$$(100111)_2 + (4123)_5 + 567 = 39 + 538 + 567 = 1144$$

Now we convert 1144 into the systems with base 2 and base 5.

$$\begin{array}{r|l}
 2 & 1144 \\
 \hline
 2 & 572 - 0 \\
 \hline
 2 & 286 - 0 \\
 \hline
 2 & 143 - 0 \\
 \hline
 2 & 71 - 1 \\
 \hline
 2 & 35 - 1 \\
 \hline
 2 & 17 - 1 \\
 \hline
 2 & 8 - 1 \\
 \hline
 2 & 4 - 0 \\
 \hline
 2 & 2 - 0 \\
 \hline
 2 & 1 - 0
 \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{r|l}
 5 & 1144 \\
 \hline
 5 & 228 - 4 \\
 \hline
 5 & 45 - 3 \\
 \hline
 5 & 9 - 0 \\
 \hline
 5 & 1 - 4
 \end{array}$$

$$1144 = (14034)_5$$

$$1144 = (10001111000)_2$$

$$(100111)_2 + (4123)_5 + 567 = (10001111000)_2$$

$$(100111)_2 + (4123)_5 + 567 = (14034)_5$$

**Example 2:** Evaluate:  $(777)_8 - (2343)_5 - (1000111)_2$  And express the answer in the number system with base 2

**Solution:**

Convert all the numbers into decimal number system.

$$\begin{aligned}
 (777)_8 &= 7 \times 8^2 + 7 \times 8^1 + 7 \times 8^0 \\
 &= 7 \times 64 + 56 + 7 \times 1 \\
 &= 448 + 56 + 7 \\
 &= 511
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 (2343)_5 &= 2 \times 5^3 + 3 \times 5^2 + 4 \times 5^1 + 3 \times 5^0 \\
 &= 250 + 75 + 20 + 3 \\
 &= 348
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 (1000111)_2 &= 1 \times 2^6 + 0 \times 2^5 + 0 \times 2^4 + 0 \times 2^3 + 1 \times 2^2 + 1 \times 2^1 + 1 \times 2^0 \\
 &= 64 + 4 + 2 + 1 = 71
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 (777)_8 - (2343)_5 - (1000111)_2 &= 511 - 348 - 71 \\
 &= 511 - 419 \\
 &= 92
 \end{aligned}$$

Now convert 92 into binary system

2	92	
2	46	- 0
2	23	- 0
2	11	- 1
2	5	- 1
2	2	- 1
1	1	- 0

$$\therefore 92 = (1011100)_2$$

### EXERCISE 3.2

1. Solve :

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <p>(i) <math>(101)_2 + (111)_2</math></p> <p>(iii) <math>(11011)_2 - (10000)_2</math></p> <p>(v) <math>(1111111)_2 \times (11011)_2</math></p> <p>(vii) <math>(340102)_5 + (230124)_5</math></p> <p>(ix) <math>(44143)_5 \times (23023)_5</math></p> <p>(xi) <math>(5631)_8 + (2456)_8</math></p> <p>(xiii) <math>(4672)_8 \times (507)_8</math></p> <p>(xv) <math>635 - \{(2244)_5 - (1243)_5 - (110111)_2\}</math></p> | <p>(ii) <math>(11001000111)_2 + (10101101111)_2</math></p> <p>(iv) <math>(111011)_2 - \{(1010)_2 + (1001)_2\}</math></p> <p>(vi) <math>(2244)_5 + (4433)_5</math></p> <p>(viii) <math>(100001)_5 - (33322)_5</math></p> <p>(x) <math>(43230)_5 \times (2412)_5</math></p> <p>(xii) <math>(7541)_8 - (5675)_8</math></p> <p>(xiv) <math>(2465)_8 \times (465)_8</math></p> |
|--|---|

2. Evaluate and express the answer with bases 2, 5 and 8.

- (i)  $(75)_8 + (1342)_5 + (100111)_2$
- (ii)  $248 + (3124)_5 - (110110)_2$
- (iii)  $(563)_8 - \{(4433)_5 - (2134)_5 - (111011)_2\}$
- (iv)  $(3344)_5 - \{(4101)_5 + (217)_8 + (1010101)_2 - (11011)_2\}$
- (v)  $(6767)_8 - \{(101111101)_2 - (4213)_5 + (1423)_5 - (1110111001)_2\}$
- (vi)  $(1423)_5 \times (110011)_2 - (243)_5$
- (vii)  $(1010111010)_2 \times (40401)_5 + (4301)_5 \times (111001)_2$
- (viii)  $\{(3404)_5 + (1100101)_2\} \{(3404)_5 - (1100101)_2\}$
- (ix)  $\{(467)_8 + (101110011)_2\} \times \{(467)_8 - (3004)_5\}$
- (x)  $\{(31234)_5 + (10110111)_2\} \{2459 - (1342)_5\}$

### REVIEW EXERCISE 3

1. Four options are given below each statement. Encircle the correct one.
  
2. Answer the following questions,
  - i. Define the binary system
  - ii. Write the digits used in octal system.
  - iii. Define decimal number system.
  - iv. Which is the biggest digit used in system with base 2?
  
3. Express the following as decimal numbers.
 

i. $(101)_2$	ii. $(1000)_2$	iii. $(2003)_5$	iv. $(3276)_8$	v. $(1134)_5$
--------------	----------------	-----------------	----------------	---------------
  
4. Convert the following into number with base 5 and octal system.
 

i. 154	ii. 820	iii. 2640	iv. 51605	v. 898
--------	---------	-----------	-----------	--------
  
5. Solve the following:
 

i. $(11001)_2 + (101)_2$	ii. $(100111)_2 + (10111)_2$
iii. $(10000)_2 - (111)_2$	
  
6. Evaluate the following:
 

i. $(21304)_5 + (2003)_5$	ii. $(4001)_5 - (302)_5$
iii. $(2442)_5 + (4043)_5$	iv. $(212)_5 \times (34)_5$
  
7. Solve the following:
 

i. $(546)_8 + (327)_8$	ii. $(7000)_8 - (4456)_8$
iii. $(7643)_8 \times (2346)_8$	iv. $(467)_8 \times (433)_8$
  
8. Evaluate and express the answer into decimal number system.
 

i. $(2273)_8 - \{(104)_8 + (42)_5\}$	ii. $\{(80)_{10} + (241)_5\} + \{(34)_5 - (111)_2\}$
iii. $[278819 - \{60065 - ((202)_5 + (101)_2)]$	

### SUMMARY

- The number system with base 2 is also called “Binary number system”.
- All the numbers in binary number system are represented by only two digits 0 and 1.
- All the binary numbers can be represented by the sum of multiples of power of base 2.
- In base 5 number system, five digits 0, 1, 2, 3 and 4 are used to represent numbers in the system.
- All the base 5 numbers can be represented by the sum of multiples of power of base 5
- The number system with base 8 is also called “Octal number system”.
- In octal number system eight digits 0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6 and 7 are used to represent numbers in the system.
- All the octal numbers can be represented by the sum of multiples of power of base 8.
- In decimal number system numbers are represented by ten digits 0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8 and 9.
- Decimal number system is a place value system in which value of each position is some power of 10 starting from zero onwards.
- To convert a number from one system to another system, the method of successive division by the base is used.

CHAPTER

4

# Financial Arithmetic

## 4.1 COMPOUND PROPORTION

We have learnt in previous grades that the equality of two ratios is called a proportion.

If four quantities  $a$ ,  $b$ ,  $c$  and  $d$  are in proportion then mathematically these are written as  $a : b :: c : d$ .

Infact it is a relationship between two ratios  $a : b$  and  $c : d$ .

Proportion is of two kinds:

(i) Direct proportion

(ii) Inverse proportion

(i) **Direct proportion**

The relationship between two ratios in which increase or decrease in one quantity causes a proportional increase or decrease in the second quantity is called direct proportion.

**Example 1:** If the price of 12 eggs is Rs.96, how many eggs can be bought with Rs.80?

**Solution:** We see that as the amount decreases the number of eggs also decreases. So it is a direct proportion.

Let the number of eggs be  $x$ .

Eggs : Eggs : Rs. : Rs.  
12 :  $x$  : 96 : 80

$$\Rightarrow \frac{12}{x} = \frac{96}{80}$$

$$\Rightarrow 96 \times x = 12 \times 80$$

$$\Rightarrow x = \frac{12 \times 80}{96} = 10 \text{ eggs}$$

In vertical form it can be written as:

Eggs : Rupees  
12 ↑ : 96 ↑  
 $x$  ↑ : 80 ↑

$$\Rightarrow \frac{x}{12} = \frac{80}{96}$$

$$\Rightarrow x = \frac{10 \times 80 \times 12}{96} = 10 \text{ eggs}$$

(ii) **Inverse proportion**

The relationship between two ratios in which increase in one quantity causes a proportional decrease in the second quantity and vice versa is called an inverse proportion.

**Example 2:** 10 men have ration for 21 days in a camp. If 3 men leave the camp, for how many days will the ration be sufficient for the remaining men?

**Solution:**

Total men = 10

The men leave the camp = 3

The remaining men = 7

We see that as the number of men decreases, the ration will be sufficient for more days (days increase). So it is an inverse proportion.

Let the number of days be  $x$

Men : Men : Days : Days  
10 : 7 : 21 :  $x$

In vertical form we can write it as:

Men : Days  
10 : 21  
7 :  $x$

$$\Rightarrow \frac{x}{21} = \frac{10}{7}$$

$$\Rightarrow x = \frac{10 \times 21}{7} = 30 \text{ eggs}$$

Thus the ration (food) will be sufficient for 30 days.



### 4.1.1 Definition of compound proportion

The relationship between two or more proportions is known as compound proportion.

### 4.1.2 Solve real life problems involving compound proportion, partnership and inheritance

#### (a) Compound proportion

The procedure of solving questions relating to the compound proportion is illustrated below with the help of examples.

**Example 3:** If 35 labourers dig 805 cubic metres of earth in 5 hours, how much of earth will 30 labourers dig in 6 hours?

**Solution:** As the number of labourers decrease, the earth dug will also decrease. It is a direct proportion.

As the working time increase, the earth dug will also increase. It is also a direct proportion.

Let the earth dug be  $x m^3$

<b>Labourers</b>	:	<b>Hours</b>	:	<b>Earth</b>
35 ↑		5 ↑		805 ↑
30 ↑		6 ↑		x ↑

$$\Rightarrow \frac{x}{805} = \frac{6}{5} \times \frac{30}{35}$$

$$\Rightarrow x = \frac{6 \times 30 \times 805}{5 \times 35}$$

$$x = 6 \times 6 \times 23$$

$$x = 828 m^3$$

Thus, 828  $m^3$  earth will be dug.

**Example 4:** Rs.8,000 are sufficient for a family of 4 members for 40 days. For how many days Rs. 15,000 will be sufficient for a family of 5 members?

**Solution:** We see that as amount increases the number of days also increases. So it is direct proportion.

As the members of a family increase the number of days decrease.

So it is an inverse proportion.

Let the number of days be  $x$ .

<b>Rupees</b>	:	<b>Members</b>	:	<b>Days</b>
8,000 ↑		4 ↓		40 ↑
15,000 ↑		5 ↓		x ↑

$$\Rightarrow \frac{x}{40} = \frac{4}{5} \times \frac{15,000}{8,000}$$

$$\text{or } x = 4 \times 15,000 \times \frac{4}{5 \times 8,000}$$

$$x = 4 \times 15 = 60 \text{ days}$$

Thus, the amount shall be sufficient for 60 days.

**Example 5:** If 4200 men have sufficient food for 32 days at a rate of 12 hectogram per person, how many men may leave so that the same food be sufficient for 42 days at a rate of 16 hectogram per person?

**Solution:** As the number of days increase, the number of men decreases. So it is an Inverse Proportion.

As the quantity of food increase the number of men decrease. So it is also Inverse Proportion.

Let the number of men be  $x$ .

<b>Days</b>	:	<b>Food</b>	:	<b>Men</b>
32 ↓		12 ↓		4200 ↑
42 ↓		16 ↓		x ↑

$$\Rightarrow \frac{x}{4200} = \frac{32}{42} \times \frac{12}{16}$$

$$\Rightarrow \text{or } x = \frac{32 \times 12 \times 4200^{100}}{42 \times 16}$$

$$x = 2 \times 12 \times 100 \\ = 2400 \text{ men}$$

Thus the food will be sufficient for 2400 men. So  $4200 - 2400 = 1800$  men may leave.

### EXERCISE 4.1

- 30 men repair a road in 56 days by working 6 hours daily. In how many days 45 men will repair the same road by working 7 hours daily?
- If 60 women spin 48 kg of cotton by working 8 hours daily, how much cotton will 30 women spin by working 12 hours daily?
- If the price of a carpet 8 meter long and 3 meter wide is Rs. 6288, what will be the price of 12 meter long and 6 meter wide carpet?
- If 15 laboures earn Rs. 67,500 in 9 days, how much money will 10 laboures earn in 12 days?
- 70 men can complete a wall of 150 meter length in 12 days. How many men will complete the wall of length 600 meter in 30 days?
- If the fare of 12 quintal luggage for a distance of 18 km is 12 rupees, how much fare will be charged for a luggage of 9 quintals for a distance of 20 km?
- 14 masons can build a wall 12 meters high in 12 days. How many masons will be needed to build a wall 120 meter high in 7 days?
- 15 machines prepare 360 sweaters in 6 days. 3 machines get out of order. How many sweaters can be prepared in 10 days by the remaining machines?
- 1440 men had sufficient food for 32 days in a camp. How many men may leave the camp so that the same food is sufficient for 40 days when the ration is increased by  $1\frac{1}{2}$  times? [Hint: The 1<sup>st</sup> element (food) is 1 and the 2<sup>nd</sup> element (food) is  $\frac{3}{2}$  ]?
- Ten men can assemble 400 cycles in 8 days. How many cycles 5 men will assemble if they work for 16 days?

### (b) Partnership

A business in which two or more persons run the business and they are responsible for the profit and loss is called the partnership.

If the partners start the business and close it together with same or different investment capital, this partnership is called a simple partnership.

If the partners contribute different capitals for different time periods or at least one partner contributes two or more capitals for different time periods, then this partnership is called a compound partnership. In this case the profit or loss is divided in the ratio of monthly investments.

**Example 1:** Saud and Ammar started a business with capitals of Rs.56,000 and Rs.64,000 respectively. After one year they earned a profit of Rs.22,500. Find the share of each one.

**Solution:** The simplified form of capital share ratio:

<b>Saud's share</b>	:	<b>Ammar's Share</b>
56,000	:	64,000
56	:	64
7	:	8

$$\text{Sum of ratios} = 7 + 8 = 15$$

$$\text{Total Profit} = \text{Rs. } 22,500$$

$$\text{Saud's Profit} = \frac{7}{15} \times 22500^{1500} \\ = 7 \times 1500 = \text{Rs. } 10,500$$

$$\text{Ammar's Profit} = \frac{8}{15} \times 22500^{1500} \\ = 8 \times 1500 = \text{Rs. } 12,000$$

**Example 2:** Tahir started a business with a capital of Rs.15,000. After 5 months Umar also joined him with an investment of Rs.30,000. After the start of 9 month's Usman joined them by investing Rs.45,000. At the end of the year they earned a profit of Rs.406000. Find the share of each one.

**Solution:**

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Tahir's investment for 12 months} &= \text{Rs. } 15,000 \\ \text{Tahir's effective investment for 1 month} &= 15000 \times 12 \\ &= \text{Rs. } 180000 \\ \text{Umar's investment for 7 months} &= \text{Rs. } 30,000 \\ \text{Umar's effective investment for 1 month} &= 30,000 \times 7 \\ &= \text{Rs. } 210000 \\ \text{Usman's investment for 3 months} &= \text{Rs. } 45,000 \\ \text{Umar's effective investment for 1 month} &= 45000 \times 3 \\ &= \text{Rs. } 135000 \end{aligned}$$

Ratios of Capitals:

$$\begin{array}{lcl} \text{Tahir} & : & \text{Umar} & : & \text{Usman} \\ 180,000 & : & 210,000 & : & 135,000 \\ 180 & : & 210 & : & 135 \\ 12 & : & 14 & : & 9 \end{array}$$

$$\text{Sum of ratios} = 12 + 14 + 9 = 35$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Tahir's Share} &= \frac{12}{35} \times \frac{81200}{11600} \\ &= 12 \times 11600 = \text{Rs. } 139200 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Umair's Share} &= \frac{14}{35} \times \frac{11600}{11600} \\ &= 14 \times 11600 = \text{Rs. } 162400 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Usman's Share} &= \frac{9}{35} \times \frac{11600}{11600} \\ &= 9 \times 11600 = \text{Rs. } 104400 \end{aligned}$$

**Example 3:** Saud, Ali and Saad started a business with Rs. 15,000, Rs. 19,000 and Rs. 12,000 respectively. Saud manages the business and receives allowance of Rs. 16,000 for this assignment. After 5 months Ali withdraws Rs. 9,000 and business is closed after 9 months. What did each receive in the profit of Rs. 58,000?

**Solution:**

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Saud's capital for 9 months} &= \text{Rs } 15,000 \\ \text{Saud's effective capital for 1 month} &= 15,000 \times 9 \\ &= \text{Rs } 135000 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Ali's capital for 5 months} &= \text{Rs } 19,000 \\ \text{Ali's effective capital for 1 month} &= 19,000 \times 5 \\ &= \text{Rs } 95,000 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Ali's capital for 4 months} &= \text{Rs } 10,000 \\ \text{Ali's effective capital for 1 month} &= 10,000 \times 4 \\ &= \text{Rs } 40,000 \\ \text{Ali's total capital} &= 95,000 + 40,000 \\ &= \text{Rs } 135,000 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Saad's capital for 9 months} &= \text{Rs } 12,000 \\ \text{Saad's effective capital for 1 month} &= 12,000 \times 9 \\ &= \text{Rs } 108,000 \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{Total Profit} = \text{Rs } 58,000$$

$$\text{Saud's Allowance} = \text{Rs } 16,000$$

$$\text{Net Profit} = 58,000 - 16,000 = \text{Rs } 42,000$$

Ratios of Capitals:

$$\begin{array}{lcl} \text{Saud} & : & \text{Ali} & : & \text{Saad} \\ 135000 & : & 135000 & : & 108000 \\ 135 & : & 135 & : & 108 \\ 15 & : & 15 & : & 12 \\ 5 & : & 5 & : & 4 \\ \text{Sum of ratios} & = & 5 + 5 + 4 & = & 14 \end{array}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Saud's Profit} &= \frac{5}{14} \times \frac{42000}{1} \times \frac{3000}{1} \\ &= 5 \times 3000 \\ &= \text{Rs. } 15,000 \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{Saud's Allowance} = \text{Rs. } 16,000$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Saud received} &= \text{Total of Saud's Profit} + \text{Allowance} \\ &= 15,000 + 16,000 = \text{Rs. } 31,000 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Ali's Profit} &= \frac{5}{14} \times 42000 \\ &= 5 \times 3000 \\ &= \text{Rs. } 15,000 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Saad's Profit} &= \frac{4}{14} \times 42000 \\ &= 4 \times 3000 \\ &= \text{Rs. } 12,000 \end{aligned}$$

### EXERCISE 4.2

1. Aslam and Akram invested Rs.27,000 and Rs.30,000 to start a business. If they earned a profit of Rs.66,500 at the end of the year, find the profit of each one.
2. Amina and Maryam started a business with investment of Rs.30,000 and Rs.40,000 respectively in one year. At the end of the year they earned a profit of Rs.8400. Find the share of each one.
3. Two partners contributed Rs.4000 and Rs.3000. 1<sup>st</sup> contributed for 9 months and the 2<sup>nd</sup> contributed the amount for 7 months. Divide a profit Rs.11590 between the partners.
4. Saad, Saud and Saeed started a business with capital of Rs.12,000, Rs.18,000 and Rs.24,000 respectively. At the end of the year, they suffered with a loss of Rs.13,500. Find the share of each in this loss.

5. Akram and Asghar started a business with Rs.9,000 and Rs.11,000 respectively. Akram withdraws Rs.1000 after 6 months. After 2 months of his withdrawal Asghar invested Rs.1000 more. After a year they earned a profit of Rs.14,000. Find the share of each in the profit.
6. Three friends A, B and C started a firm with Rs.20,000, Rs.16,000 and Rs.18,000 respectively. A kept his money for 4 months, B for 6 months and C for 8 months. Divide a profit of Rs.12,000 among these friends.
7. Aslam started a business with Rs.35,000. After 3 months Akram joined the business with Rs.4000 and after 6 months Asghar invested Rs.5000. At the end of the year they earned a profit of Rs.1620. Find the share of each in the profit.

### (C) Inheritance

When a person dies, then the assets left by him are called inheritance and it is distributed among his legal inheritors according to Islamic Shariah Law. In Islam the principals of distribution of inheritance are given below.

- First of all his/her funeral expenses and all his/her all debt be paid.
- Then execute his will upto 1/3 of his/her property if asked for.
- Then distribute the remaining inheritance accordingly.

The procedure is illustrated with the help of following examples.

**Example 1:** A man left his property of Rs.640000. A debt of Rs.40,000 was due to him and Rs.5,000 was spent on his burial. Distribute the amount between his widow, 1 daughter and 2 sons according to the Islamic Law.

### Solution:

$$\text{Total amount of Property} = \text{Rs. } 640000$$

$$\text{His debt} = \text{Rs. } 40,000$$

$$\text{Burial Expenses} = \text{Rs. } 5,000$$

$$\text{Total Amount paid} = 40,000 + 5,000 = \text{Rs. } 45,000$$

$$\text{Remaining amount} = 640000 - 45,000$$

$$= \text{Rs. } 595000$$

$$\text{Widow's Share} = \frac{1}{8} \times 595000 = \text{Rs. } 74,375$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Remaining Inheritance} &= 595000 - 74,375 \\ &= \text{Rs. } 520625 \end{aligned}$$

Now ratios of shares

$$\begin{array}{lcl} \text{Sons} & : & \text{Daughter} \\ 2 & : & 1 \\ 2 \times 2 = 4 & : & 1 \times 1 = 1 \end{array}$$

$$\text{Sum of ratios} = 4 + 1 = 5$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Share of 2 Sons} &= \frac{4}{5} \times 520625 \\ &= 4 \times 104125 \\ &= \text{Rs. } 416500 \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{Share of each son} = \frac{416500}{2} \times \text{Rs. } 208250$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Share of one daughter} &= \frac{1}{5} \times 520625 \\ &= \text{Rs. } 104125 \end{aligned}$$

**Example 2:** Mst. Zainab Begum died leaving behind her a property of Rs.802500 which was to be distributed among her husband, her mother and two daughters. The husband got  $\frac{1}{4}$ , mother got  $\frac{1}{6}$  and remaining for 2 daughters. Rs.7,500 was spent on her burial. Find the share of each one.

**Solution:**

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Total amount left} &= \text{Rs. } 802500 \\ \text{Expenditure on her burial} &= \text{Rs. } 7,500 \\ \text{Remaining amount} &= 802500 - 7,500 \\ &= \text{Rs. } 795000 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Share of her husband} &= \frac{1}{4} \times 795000 \\ &= \text{Rs. } 198750 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Share of her mother} &= \frac{1}{6} \times 795000 \\ &= \text{Rs. } 132500 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Total share of her husband and her mother} &= 198750 + 132500 \\ &= \text{Rs. } 331250 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Remaining Inheritance} &= 795000 - 331250 \\ &= \text{Rs. } 463750 \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{Share of 2 daughters} = \text{Rs. } 463750$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Share of each daughter} &= \frac{463750}{2} \\ &= \text{Rs. } 231875 \end{aligned}$$

### EXERCISE 4.3

1. A man left Rs. 240000 as inheritance. His heirs are 6 daughters and 2 sons. Find the share of each inheritor that a son gets twice of his sister's share.
2. Allah Ditta died leaving a property of Rs. 850000. He left a widow, two sons and one daughter. Find the share of each in the inheritance if the burial expenditure was Rs. 50,000.
3. Akram left a wealth of Rs. 780000. His wife is a widow, 3 sons and 4 daughters. Calculate the share of each one if the funeral expenses is Rs. 30,000 and a loan of Rs. 50,000 is due to him.
4. A man died leaving a saving of Rs. 72,000 in the bank. Find the share of each: widow, one son and one daughter.
5. Aslam left a property worth Rs.650000. He had to pay Rs. 50,000 as debt. The remaining amount was divided among his 2 sons and 2 daughters. Find the share of each.
6. Asghar ali died leaving assets worth Rs. 655275. Funeral expenses were Rs. 5275. He had to pay Rs. 50,000 as debt. After marking these payments, his widow shall get  $\frac{1}{8}$  of the remaining property. Find the share of his son and one daughter when share of son is double the share of his daughter.
7. A person died leaving behind inheritance of Rs. 300000. Distribute the amount among 4 sons and 3 daughters so that each son gets double of what a daughter gets. Find the share of each when a debt of Rs. 80,000 was also to be paid.



8. Wife of Ahmad died leaving behind 2 daughters and a son. Ahmad got  $\frac{1}{4}$  of the inheritance of Rs. 180000. The remaining amount was to be distributed among her children such that each son got twice of what a daughter got. Find the share of her son and each daughter.

## 4.2 BANKING

It is a business activity of accepting and safeguarding the money and then earn a profit by lending out this money.

### 4.2.1 Definition Commercial Bank deposits

The function of a bank which accepts deposits, provides loans and other services to the clients is known as commercial banking.

#### 4.2.1.1 Types of a Bank Account

There are four types of bank accounts.

- **PLS Saving Bank Account:**

It is an account on the basis of profit and loss sharing. The bank uses the deposits in some business and gives the share in profit and loss to the account holder at the end of specified period. This account is meant to encourage the saving habits among the persons having small income means. Zakat is deducted on notified balance on first Ramazan each year.

- **Current Deposit Account:**

This account is usually opened by businessmen who have a number of deposits and withdrawal regularly. It is a running account and no interest is paid on its balance. In this account amount can be deposited and withdrawn at any time during banking hours without any notice. No Zakat is deducted on this account.

- **PLS Term Deposit Account:**

This account is free of interest. PLS term deposit holder shares profit and loss on the rate determined by the bank after every six months. The rate of profit on fixed deposits is comparatively higher than saving deposits. The higher rate of profit is on longer deposits.

- **Foreign Currency Account:**

A foreign currency account is the account maintained in a commercial bank in the currency other than Pakistani currency. Usually foreign currency accounts are maintained in Dollars, Pounds, Euro etc. Foreign currency accounts are exempted from Zakat and taxes. Rate of profit in this account is very low.

#### 4.2.1.2 Describe negotiable instruments like cheque, demand draft and pay order

**Negotiable Instrument:**

It is a document which can be transferred from one person to another. It is payable either to the order of the bearer or to his agent as the case may be. This document is entitled to receive that amount which is mentioned in it.

**Cheque:**

A cheque is a written order that instructs a bank to pay the specific amount from a specified account to the holder of the cheque. A crossed cheque has to be deposited in the specified account.

**Demand Draft:**

It is a method used by individuals to make transfer payments from one bank account to another. The bank receives the money in advance before it issues the draft. A very small fee is charged by the bank to prepare it.

**Pay order:**

It is a document which instructs a bank to pay a certain amount to a third party. Pay order is issued by the bank on the request of its customer. It is issued on the receipt of full amount for which a pay order is issued by the bank. It can be encashed from any other bank.



## 4.2.2 On-line Banking

### 4.2.2.3 Explain On-line Banking

The use of internet by banks to assist their customers through on-line banking. It allows customers to perform banking transactions such as money withdrawal, pay utility bills and transfer funds from their account to another account. A good online bank will offer its customers just about every service traditionally available through a local branch.

- **Transactions through ATM (Auto Teller Machine)**

An automated teller machine (ATM) is electric devices that allows a bank's customers to draw cash and check their account balances without any need for a humane teller. The transactions are as given below:

Withdraw money, make deposits, print a statement, check account balances and transfer money between accounts.

- **Debit Card**

It is a plastic payment card that provides card holder electronic access to his bank account at anytime and anywhere. It is a facility provided to the customers to perform different transactions. It is a smarter and secured way to make quick payments at the time of purchase of different goods from traditional or online market.

- **Credit Card (Visa and Master)**

It is a thin plastic card which can be used to buy articles. Visa and Master cards are used worldwide for making payments. These are not the names of cards but are the names of global credit card companies. Credit card holder is charged an annual fee.

## 4.2.3 Conversion of Currencies

A foreign currency exchange rate is a price that represents how much it costs to buy the currency of one country using the currency of another country.

### 4.2.3.4 Convert Pakistani Currency to well-known international currencies

Currency conversion rates are not permanent but these change day by day. We use these currency rates to convert Pakistani currency to different international currencies. (rate of US \$ is equal to Rs. 99.80)

**Example 1:** Mr. Saud wants to exchange Pakistani Rupees (PKR). 50,000 to US dollars. How many US Dollars will he receive? (Rate of US \$ = Rs 99.80)

**Solution:**

Amount to be converted = Rs. 50,000

Rate of one US Dollar = Rs. 99.80

$$\text{Number of US Dollars} = \frac{50,000}{99.80} = \text{US \$ } 501.0$$

**Example 2:** Convert Rs. 75,810 into UK£. (1 UK Pound = Rs. 168.50)

**Solution:**

Amount to be converted = Rs. 75810

Rate of 1 UK £ = Rs. 168.50

$$\text{Number of UK £} = \frac{75810}{168.50} = \text{UK£ } 449.91$$

Table below shows current exchange rates of some currencies.

Country	Currency	Symbol	Buying (PKR)	Selling (PKR)
US	Dollar (\$)	USD	99.80	99.05
UK	Pound (£)	GBP	168.50	168.75
Saudi	Riyal (SR)	SAR	26.85	27.10
Indian	Rupee	INR	1.60	1.65

**EXERCISE 4.4**

1. Convert Rs. 70,000 into US \$ if the conversion rate is 1 US \$ = Rs.99.80.
2. Convert Rs. 75,000 into UK£. (Rate 1UK£ = Rs.168.50).
3. Convert Rs. 50,000 into Saudi Riyal. (Rate 1 SAR = Rs. 26.85).
4. Convert Rs. 48,000 into Indian Rupee. (1 INR = Rs. 1.60).
5. Convert Rs. 35,000 into Australian Dollar. (1 Australian Dollar = Rs. 92.77).
6. Convert Rs. 80,000 into Chinese Yaun. (1 Chinese Yaun = Rs. 15.91).
7. Convert if Rs. 50,000 into Canadian Dollar. (1 Canadian Dollar = Rs.92.00).
8. Convert Rs.70,000 into Turkish Lira. (1 Turkish Lira = Rs. 46.50).

**4.2.4 Profit / Markup**

- **Profit**

When we deposit money into a bank, the bank use our money and in return pays an extra amount alongwith our actual deposit. The extra money which the bank gives for the use of our amount is called profit on the deposit.

- **Markup**

When we borrow money from bank to run a business, the bank in return receives some extra amount alongwith the actual money given. This extra money which the bank receives is known as markup.

- **Principal amount**

The amount we borrow or deposit in the bank is called Principal amount.

- **Profit / Markup rate**

The rate at which the bank gives share to its account holders is known as profit / markup rate. It is expressed in percentage.

- **Period**

The time for which a particular amount is invested in a business is known as period.

**4.2.4.5 Calculate the profit / markup, the Principal amount, the profit / markup rate, the period**

- **Calculate profit / markup**

For calculation of profit / markup, we use the formula.

$$\text{Profit / markup} = \text{Principal amount} \times \text{Time} \times \text{Rate}$$

$$\text{or } I = P \times R \times T$$

The use of this formula is illustrated with the help of examples.

**Example 1:** Younas borrowed Rs. 65,000 from a bank at the rate of 5% for 2 years. Find the amount of markup and the total amount to be paid.

**Solution:**

Here Principal amount (P) = Rs. 65,000

$$\text{Rate (R)} = 5\%$$

$$\text{Time (T)} = 2 \text{ years}$$

$$\text{Markup} = P \times R \times T$$

$$\text{Markup} = 65,000 \times \frac{5}{100} \times 2$$

$$= 650 \times 5 \times 2$$

$$= \text{Rs. } 6,500$$

So, Younas will have to pay its. Rs. 6,500 as markup.

$$\text{Total amount to be paid} = 65,000 + 6,500 = \text{Rs. } 71,500$$

**Example 2:** A student purchased a computer by taking loan from bank on simple interest. He took loan of Rs. 25,000 at the rate of 10% for 2 years. Calculate the markup to be paid and the total amount to be paid back.

**Solution:**

Here Principal amount (P) = Rs. 25,000

$$\text{Rate (R)} = 10\%$$

$$\text{Time (T)} = 2 \text{ years}$$

$$\text{Markup} = P \times R \times T$$

$$= 25,000 \times \frac{10}{100} \times 2$$

$$= 250 \times 20 = \text{Rs. } 5,000$$

He has to pay Rs. 5,000 as markup.

$$\text{Total amount to be paid} = 25,000 + 5,000 = \text{Rs. } 30,000$$

- **Calculate Principal Amount**

We have used formula of markup in the previous examples, we will use the same formula for Principal amount.

$$I = P \times R \times T$$

$$P = \frac{I}{R \times T}$$

**Example 1:** What principal amount is taken to bring in Rs. 640 as profit at the rate of 4% in 2 years?

**Solution:**

$$\text{Profit} = \text{Rs. } 640$$

$$\text{Rate (R)} = 4\%$$

$$\text{Time (T)} = 2 \text{ years}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Principal amount} &= \frac{\text{Profit}}{R \times T} \\ &= \frac{640}{4 \times 2} \\ &= 80 \times 100 \\ &= \text{Rs. } 8,000 \end{aligned}$$

Thus, the Principal amount = Rs. 8,000

**Example 2:** A person got some loan on which he has to pay Rs. 3,500 as markup at the rate of 10% for 3.5 years. What is the amount of loan?

**Solution:**

$$\text{Markup} = \text{Rs. } 3,500$$

$$\text{Rate (R)} = 10\%$$

$$\text{Time (T)} = 3.5 \text{ years} = \frac{7}{2} \text{ years}$$

$$\text{Principal amount (P)} = \frac{\text{Interest}}{\text{Rate} \times \text{Time}}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Principal amount} &= \frac{3500 \times 100 \times 2}{10 \times 7} \\ &= 50 \times 200 \\ &= \text{Rs. } 10,000 \end{aligned}$$

Thus, the amount of loan = Rs. 10,000

- **Calculate Profit I Markup rate**

The formula for calculation of profit rate is  $\text{Rate} = \frac{\text{Markup}}{\text{Principal amount} \times \text{Time}}$

**Example 1:** At what annual rate percent of markup would the principal amount Rs. 68,000 become Rs. 86,360 in 3 years?

**Solution:**

$$\text{Total amount to be paid} = \text{Rs. } 86,360$$

$$\text{Principal Amount} = \text{Rs. } 68,000$$

$$\text{Markup} = 86,360 - 68,000$$

$$= \text{Rs. } 18,360$$

$$\text{Period / Time} = 3 \text{ years}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Rate} &= \frac{\text{Markup}}{\text{Principle} \times \text{Time}} \\ &= \frac{18360 \times 100}{68000 \times 3} \end{aligned}$$

$$= \frac{612}{68} = 9\%$$

Rate of markup = 9%

- **Calculate the Period**

**Example 2:** A person got loan from a bank at a rate of 3% per year for some period. In how much period his loan of Rs. 65,000 will become Rs. 68,900.

**Solution:**

Total Amount = Rs. 68,900

Principal amount = Rs. 65,000

Markup = 68,900 – 65,000  
= Rs. 3,900

Rate = 3%

Period / Time = ?

$$\text{Period / Time} = \frac{\text{Markup}}{\text{Principal amount} \times \text{Time}}$$

$$= \frac{3900}{65000 \times \frac{3}{100}}$$

$$= \frac{3900 \times 100}{65000 \times 3}$$

$$= \frac{3900 \times 100}{195000}$$

$$= \frac{3900 \times 100}{195000}$$

$$= \frac{3900 \times 100}{195000}$$

$$= \frac{3900 \times 100}{195000}$$

$$= 2 \text{ years.}$$

#### 4.2.5 Types of Finance

##### 4.2.5.6 Explain Overdraft (OD), Running Finance, Demand Finance and Leasing

- **Overdraft (OD):**

It is a borrowing facility provided by a bank to account holder to withdraw some

amount in excess of his original account balance. In other words if there is no amount left in an account and the bank does not send a cheque back due to lack of funds in the drawer's account, then this is called Overdraft.

- **Running Finance:**

Running Finance is very similar to overdraft. The aim of running finance is to give a chance to the customers to withdraw more money that they actually have. Therefore it can be considered as a credit facility which is meant for a credit limit with a variable interest rate. Usually the running finance is granted for a period of 1 year.

- **Demand Finance:**

One can think of demand as a person's willingness to go out and buy a certain product. For example market demand is the total of what everybody in the market wants and is willing to pay for. To meet these requirements banks have demanded finance. Demand is a type of loan that may be called in by the bank (or lender) at any time. It may be either short term or long term.

- **Leasing:**

A lease is a contractual agreement between the lessee (user) to pay the lessor (owner) for the use of an asset. It means the user rents the land or goods rented out by the owner. The ownership of the leased asset during the leased period known as term remains with the lessor. Hire purchase is a method of buying goods in which payments of purchase price is spread over specific term by payment of an initial deposit known as the down payment. It is explained with the help of examples.

#### 4.2.5.7 Solve Real Life Problems Related to Banking and Finance

**Example 1:** The price of a car is Rs. 450000. It can be bought at 15% of the price as down payment. It had to be leased on simple markup of  $10\frac{1}{2}\%$  per year for 2 years. The installments will be made on

monthly basis. Find

- The monthly installments
- The total leased price of the car paid.

**Solution:**

Down payment = 15% of 450,000

$$= \frac{15}{100} \times 450,000$$

$$= 15 \times 4500$$

$$= \text{Rs. } 67,500$$

The remaining amount = 450,000 - 67,500

$$= \text{Rs. } 382,500$$

$$I = P \times R \times T$$

The markup on Rs. 382,500 for 2 years =  $382,500 \times \frac{21}{2} \times \frac{1}{100} \times 2$

$$= 3825 \times 21$$

$$= \text{Rs. } 80,325$$

Additional amount to be paid in 24 monthly installments

$$= 382,500 + 80,325$$

$$= \text{Rs. } 462,825$$

(i) Monthly installments =  $462,825 \div 24$

$$= \text{Rs. } 19,284.38$$

(ii) Total amount paid =  $67,500 + 462,825$

$$= \text{Rs. } 530,325$$

**Example 2:** A company gets a house on lease for 6 years. According to agreement the company paid Rs. 10,00,000 as down payment and shall pay Rs. 20,000 per month as rent. After 3 years the company shall increase the rent 3%. Calculate the total amount the lesser (owner) would get:

**Solution:**

Down payment received by the owner = Rs. 10,00,000

Rent per month for 3 years = Rs. 20,000

Total Rent for 3 years =  $3 \times 12 \times 20,000$

$$= \text{Rs. } 7,20,000$$

Rate of rent after 3 years = Rs.  $20,000 \times \frac{103}{100}$

$$= \text{Rs. } 20,600$$

Total Rent for next 3 years =  $3 \times 12 \times 20,600$

$$= \text{Rs. } 7,41,600$$

Total amount received by the owner =  $10,00,000 + 7,20,000 + 7,41,600$

$$= \text{Rs. } 24,61,600$$

**EXERCISE 4.5**

- Find the profit on Rs. 40,000 at the rate of 3% per year for 4 years.
- Saud borrowed Rs. 25,000 from bank at the rate of 6% per year for 3 years. Find the markup of the bank.
- Find the principal amount invested by Riaz in a business if he receives a profit of Rs. 4,200 in 3 years at the rate of 10% per year.
- Ajmal invested some amount in a business. He receives a profit of Rs. 27,000 at the rate of 12% per year for 3 years. Find his original investment.
- At what annual rate percent would Rs. 6,800 amount to Rs. 9,044 in 11 years?
- At what annual rate of profit would a sum of Rs. 5,800 will increase to Rs. 7,105 in 3 years' time?
- How long would Rs. 15,500 have to be invested at a markup rate of 6% per year to gain Rs. 2,790.
- How long would Rs. 25,000 have to be deposited in the bank at 12% per year to receive back Rs. 31,000.
- Saeed invests Rs. 12,000 at  $8\frac{1}{2}$ % per year profit. How much would the amount become after 2 years and 6 months?
- Arshad buys an air-conditioner at Rs. 45,000. For leasing it, he has to pay 10% down payment and remaining amount on simple markup of 15% per year for 2 years on monthly investments.  
Find (i) Monthly installment and (ii) Total amount paid
- A bank gets a piece of land on lease for 5 years. According to the agreement the bank paid Rs. 12,00,000 as down payment and shall pay Rs. 18,000 per month as rent. After 3 years the bank shall increase the rent by 3%. Find the total amount the owner (lessor) would get.



### 4.3 PERCENTAGE

The percentage means “per hundred” or out of hundred”. The symbol used for percentage is %.

#### 4.3.1 Profit and Loss:

If the selling price (S.P) is higher than the cost price (C.P), then profit occurs. It can be written as

$$\text{Profit} = \text{Sale Price} - \text{Cost Price}$$

$$\text{or Profit} = \text{S.P} - \text{C.P}$$

If the cost price (C.P) is higher than the selling price (S.P), then loss occurs. It can be written as

$$\text{Loss} = \text{Cost Price} - \text{Sale Price}$$

$$\text{or Loss} = \text{C.P} - \text{S.P}$$

#### 4.3.1.1 Find Percentage Profit and Percentage Loss

Percentage profit or loss is always expressed in terms of cost price. To find percent profit and percentage loss we will use the following formulas accordingly.

$$\text{Percentage Profit} = \frac{\text{profit}}{\text{cost price}} \times 100$$

$$\text{Percent Loss} = \frac{\text{Loss}}{\text{cost price}} \times 100$$

**Example 1:** Saud bought a motor-cycle for Rs. 50,000 and sold it for Rs. 56,000. Find his Percentage Profit.

**Solution:**

$$\text{Cost Price (C.P)} = \text{Rs. } 50,000$$

$$\text{Sale Price (S.P)} = \text{Rs. } 56,000$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Profit} &= \text{S.P} - \text{C.P} \\ &= 56,000 - 50,000 \\ &= \text{Rs. } 6,000 \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{Profit \%} = \frac{\text{Profit}}{\text{C.P}} \times 100$$

$$\begin{aligned} &= \frac{12}{1} \\ &= \frac{\cancel{6000}}{\cancel{50000}} \times \cancel{100} \\ &= 12\% \end{aligned}$$

**Example 2:** Hameed bought a piece of land worth Rs. 300000 and sold it for Rs. 240000. Find his profit / loss percentage?

**Solution:**

$$\text{Cost Price (C.P)} = \text{Rs. } 300000$$

$$\text{Sale Price (S.P)} = \text{Rs. } 240000$$

$$\text{Loss} = \text{C.P} - \text{S.P}$$

$$= 300000 - 240000$$

$$= \text{Rs. } 60,000$$

$$\text{Loss Percentage} = \frac{\text{Loss}}{\text{C.P}} \times 100$$

$$\begin{aligned} &= \frac{20}{1} \\ &= \frac{\cancel{60,000}}{\cancel{300,000}} \times \cancel{100} \\ &= \text{Rs. } 20\% \end{aligned}$$



### 4.3.2 Discount:

Discount means to reduce the price of an article in its market price is also called list price or regular price. After reduction the amount is known as the sale price. The discount is the amount you saved in buying an article.

$$\text{Discount} = \text{Market price} - \text{Sale price}$$

The discount is usually expressed as the percentage of the market price.

#### 4.3.2.2 Find Percentage Discount:

Following examples illustrate the procedure of finding percentage discount.

**Example 1:** Ali bought some articles of worth Rs. 2,500. He was allowed 15% discount on his purchase. Find sale price of the said articles.

**Solution:**

$$\text{Market price} = \text{Rs. } 2500$$

$$\text{Discount} = 15\%$$

$$\text{Discount on the articles} = \frac{2500 \times 15}{100}$$

$$= \text{Rs. } 375$$

$$\text{So Sale Price} = 2500 - 375$$

$$= \text{Rs. } 2,125$$

**Example 2:** The market price of an article is Rs. 1,700. The sale price of the article is Rs. 1,360. Find the percentage discount.

**Solution:**

$$\text{Market Price} = \text{Rs. } 1,700$$

$$\text{Sale Price} = \text{Rs. } 1,360$$

$$\text{Discount} = \text{M.P} - \text{S.P}$$

$$= 1700 - 1360$$

$$= \text{Rs. } 340$$

$$\text{Percentage discount} = \frac{\text{Discount}}{\text{market price}} \times 100$$

$$= \frac{340}{1700} \times 100$$

$$= \frac{340}{1700} \times 100$$

$$= 20\%$$

#### 4.3.2.3 Solve Problems Involving Successive Transactions

**Example 1:** The Cost Price of an article is Rs. 6,000. The shopkeeper writes the market price of the article 15% above the cost price. The sale price of that article is Rs. 4600. Find percentage discount given to the customer.

**Solution:**

$$\text{Cost Price} = \text{Rs. } 6,000$$

$$\text{Percentage increase} = 15\%$$

$$\text{Total increase on Cost Price} = \frac{6000 \times 15}{100}$$

$$= \text{Rs. } 900$$

$$\text{Market Price} = 6000 + 900$$

$$= \text{Rs. } 6900$$

$$\text{Sale Price} = \text{Rs. } 4600$$

$$\text{Discount} = \text{M.P} - \text{S.P}$$

$$= 6900 - 4600$$

$$= \text{Rs. } 2300$$

$$\text{Percentage discount} = \frac{\text{Discount}}{\text{market price}} \times 100$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \frac{1}{\frac{2300}{6900}} \times 100 \\
 &= \frac{1}{3} \times 100 \\
 &= \frac{100}{3} = 33\frac{1}{3} \%
 \end{aligned}$$

**Example 2:** A wholeseller sold an article to a retailer at a profit of 10%. The retailer sold it for Rs. 1897.50 at a profit of 15%. What is the cost of wholeseller?

**Solution:**

$$\text{Sale price of the retailer} = \text{Rs. } 1897.50 = \text{Rs. } \frac{3795}{2}$$

$$\text{Profit} = 15\%$$

$$\text{Cost price of retailer} = ?$$

$$\text{Let the cost price of the retailer} = \text{Rs. } 100$$

$$\text{Profit} = 15\%$$

$$\text{Sale price of retailer} = 100 + 15 = \text{Rs. } 115$$

If the sale price of retailer is Rs. 115, his cost price = Rs. 100

$$\text{If the sale price of retailer is Rs. } 1, \text{ his cost price} = \frac{100}{15}$$

If the sale price of retailer is Rs.  $\frac{3795}{2}$  his cost price

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \frac{100}{15} \times \frac{3795}{2} \\
 &= \frac{100}{15} \times \frac{3795}{2} \\
 &= \frac{100}{15} \times \frac{3795}{2} \\
 &= \frac{100}{15} \times \frac{3795}{2}
 \end{aligned}$$

$$= 50 \times 33$$

$$= \text{Rs. } 1,650$$

The cost price of retailer = The sale price of wholeseller

Sale price of wholeseller = Rs. 1,650

Let the cost price of the wholeseller = Rs. 100

$$\text{Profit} = 10\%$$

Sale price of wholeseller =  $100 + 10 = \text{Rs. } 110$

If the sale price of wholeseller is Rs. 110, then his cost price = 100

If the sale price of the wholeseller is Rs. 1, then cost price =  $\frac{100}{110}$

If the sale price of wholeseller is Rs. 1,650, the cost price is

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \frac{100}{110} \times \frac{1650}{1} \\
 &= \frac{100}{110} \times 1650
 \end{aligned}$$

$$= \text{Rs. } 1,500$$

The cost of wholeseller = Rs. 1,500

#### EXERCISE 4.6

- Haneef bought a car for Rs.550000. He sold it for Rs.605000 after same time. Find his profit percentage.
- The market price of an article is Rs.3000. Discount on this article is 20%. Find the sale price of the article.
- A manufacturer sells an article which cost him Rs.2,500 at 20% profit. The purchaser sells the article at 30% gain. Find the final sale price of the article.
- The market price of every article was reduced to 12% in a sale at a store. A cash customer was given a further 10% discount. What price would a cash customer pay for an article marked initially as Rs.2000.
- Tahir purchased two toys for his children. He buys Spider Man and Barbie Doll for Rs.3000, and Rs.5000 respectively. If a discount of 20% is given on all toys, find the amount of discount and the sale price for each toy.
- Tufail buys some items from a store. A special discount of 15% is offered on food items and 20% on other items. If he purchases food worth Rs.1250 and other items worth Rs.750, find the amount of discount and sale price of each separately.

7. A wholeseller sets his sale price by adding 15% to his cost price. The retailer adds 25% to the price he pays to the wholeseller to fix his Sale Price. At what price would a retailer sell an article which cost the wholeseller Rs.400.

## 4.4 INSURANCE

### 4.4.1 Definition of Insurance:

Insurance is a system of protecting or safeguarding against risk or injuries. It provides financial protection for property, life, health, etc. against specified contingencies such as death, loss or damage and involving payment of regular premium in return for a policy guaranteeing. The contract is called the insurance policy.

The party bearing the risk is the insurer or assurer and the party whose risk is covered is known as insured or assured.

There are many different types of insurance including health, life, property, etc. We will learn about only two types in this grade namely

- (i) Life insurance and (ii) Vehicle insurance

### 4.4.2 Solve Real Life Problems Regarding Life and Vehicle Insurance

#### (i) Life Insurance:

Life insurance is an agreement between the policy owner and the insurance company for an agreed time period. Insurance company agrees to pay back a sum equal to original amount and the profit at the end of agreed period or on the death or critical illness of the policy owner. In return the policy owner agrees to pay regular installments of premium.

**Example 1:** Saud got a life insurance policy of Rs. 500000. Rate of annual premium is 4.5% of the total amount of the policy where as the policy fee is at the rate of 0.25%. Find the annual premium of the policy.

#### Solution:

Policy amount = Rs. 500000

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Policy fee @ } 0.25\% &= \frac{25}{100} \times 50,00,00 \times \frac{1}{100} \\ &= \text{Rs. } 1250 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{First premium @ } 4.5\% &= \frac{45}{100} \times \frac{1}{100} \times 500000 \\ &= \text{Rs. } 22,500 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Annual premium} &= \text{First premium} + \text{policy fee} \\ &= 22,500 + 1,250 \\ &= \text{Rs. } 23,750 \end{aligned}$$

**Example 2:** A man purchased a life insurance policy for Rs. 300000. The annual premium is 4.5% of the policy amount whereas policy fee is at the rate of 0.25%. Calculate the annual premium and quarterly premium at 27% of the annual premium.

#### Solution:

Policy amount = Rs. 300000

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Policy fee @ } 0.25\% &= \frac{25}{100} \times 30,00,00 \times \frac{1}{100} \\ &= \text{Rs. } 750 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{First premium @ } 4.5\% &= \frac{45}{100} \times \frac{1}{100} \times 300000 \\ &= \text{Rs. } 13,500 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Annual premium} &= \text{First premium} + \text{policy fee} \\ &= 13500 + 750 \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{Annual premium} = \text{Rs. } 14,250$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Quarterly premium} &= \frac{285}{100} \times \frac{27}{100} \\ &= \frac{285 \times 27}{2} \end{aligned}$$

$$= \text{Rs. } 3847.50$$

**(ii) Vehicle Insurance:**

Vehicle insurance provides a protection against risks to the vehicle. The amount of policy in this case depends upon the actual value of the vehicle.

**Example 1:** Aslam got his motorcycle insured for one year. The price of his motorcycle is Rs.50,000 and the rate of insurance is 4.5%. Find the amount of premium.

**Solution:**

The price of the motorcycle = Rs. 50,000

Rate of insurance = 4.5%

$$\text{Amount of premium} = \frac{4.5}{100} \times 50000$$

$$= \frac{45}{10} \times \frac{1}{100} \times 50000$$

$$= \text{Rs. } 2,250$$

**Example 2:** Khalid purchased an insurance policy for his car. The worth of the car is Rs.750000. The rate of annual premium is 3% for two years and depreciation rate is 10%. Find the total amount he paid as premium.

**Solution:**

Worth of car = Rs. 750000

Rate of annual premium = 3%

Depreciation rate = 10%

Time period = 2 years

First premium = 3% of 750000

$$\text{First premium} = \frac{3}{100} \times 750000$$

$$= \text{Rs. } 22,500$$

Depreciation after one year = 10% of 750000

$$\text{Depreciation after one year} = \frac{10}{100} \times 750000$$

$$= \text{Rs. } 75,000$$

Depreciated price after one year = 750000 – 75,000

$$= \text{Rs. } 675000$$

2<sup>nd</sup> premium = 3% of 675000

$$= \frac{3}{100} \times 6,75,000$$

$$= \text{Rs. } 20,250$$

Depreciation after 2 years = 10% of 675000

$$= \frac{10}{100} \times 675000$$

$$= 67,500$$

Depreciated price after 2 years = 675000 – 67,500

$$= \text{Rs. } 607500$$

Total amount paid as premium = 22,500 + 20,250

$$= \text{Rs. } 42,750$$

**EXERCISE 4.7**

1. Usman purchased a car for Rs. 1250000 and insured it for one year at the rate of 4.5%. Find the annual premium.
2. Hameed got a life insurance policy of Rs.200000. Find the first premium he has to pay when the rate of annual premium is 5.2% and policy fee is 0.25%.
3. Zahid got a life insurance policy of Rs.500000 at the rate of 5.2% and the policy fee is 0.25%. Calculate half yearly premium at 52% of the annual premium.
4. Usama insured his life for Rs.700000. Find annual premium at 4.5% of the policy amount with policy fee at the rate of 0.25%. Calculate monthly premium at 9% of the annual premium.

5. Saud bought a car for Rs.700000 and got it insured at 4.2% annual premium for 3 years. Calculate how much premium he paid in 3 years if depreciation rate is 12%.
6. A man has a car of worth Rs. 1400000. He got it insured for a period of 2 years at the rate of 4.5%. The depreciation rate is 10% per year. He has to pay the premium yearly. Find the total amount of premium he has to pay for a period of 2 years.
7. Faheem got his car insured at a rate of 3% for 3 years. The worth of his car is Rs.850000. Find the total amount paid as premium if rate of depreciation is 10% per year.

## 4.5 INCOME TAX

### 4.5.1 Explain Income Tax, Exempt Income and Taxable Income

- **Income Tax:**

Income tax is imposed on the annual income of a person whose income exceeds a certain limit which is determined by the government. The rules for income tax are amended by the government from time to time.

- **Exempt Income:**

Tax exempt-income is money on which a person does not have to pay tax. In other words the income which is not subject to income tax.

- **Taxable Income:**

Taxable income is the difference of annual income and exempted income.

Taxable Income = Annual Income – Exempted Income

**Taxable Income Slabs**

Sr. #	Annual Income	Rate of Tax
1.	Rs. 0 to Rs. 400,000	0%
2.	Rs. 400001 to Rs. 750000	5% of the amount exceeding Rs. 400000
3.	Rs. 750001 to Rs. 1400000	Rs.17500 + 10% of the amount exceeding Rs. 750000
4.	Rs. 1400001 to Rs. 1500000	Rs.82,500 + 12.5% of the amount exceeding Rs. 1400000
5.	Rs. 1500001 to Rs. 1,800,000	Rs.95,000 +15% of the amount exceeding Rs.1500000

6.	Rs.1800001 to Rs.2500000	Rs.140000 +17.5% of the amount exceeding Rs.1800000
7.	Rs.2500001 to Rs.3000000	Rs.262500 + 20% of the amount exceeding Rs.2500000
8.	Rs. 3000001 to Rs.3500000	Rs.362500 + 22.5% of the amount exceeding Rs.3000000
9.	Rs.3,500,001 to Rs.4000000	Rs.475000 + 25% of the amount exceeding Rs.3500000
10.	Rs. 4000001 to Rs. 7000000	Rs.600000+ 27.5% of the amount exceeding Rs.4000000
11.	Rs.7000001 and above	Rs.1425000 + 30% of the amount exceeding Rs. 7000000

### 4.5.2 Solve Simple Real Life Problems Related to Individual Income Tax Assesse

Calculation of Income Tax is illustrated with the following examples. Use the above table for calculations.

**Example 1:** Calculate the amount of Income Tax at 5% of a person whose income is Rs.578,000 for the year.

**Solution:**

Income of the person = Rs. 578,000

The amount lies in Taxable income slab at Sr. # 2  
i.e, 5% of the amount exceeding Rs. 400,000

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Taxable income} &= 578,000 - 400,000 \\ &= \text{Rs.}178,000 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore \text{Income Tax @5\%} &= \frac{5}{100} \times 178,000 \\ &= \text{Rs. } 8,900 \end{aligned}$$



**Example 2:** The annual income of a person is Rs. 1,885,000. Calculate the amount of income tax if he paid Zakat Rs. 47,125.

**Solution:**

Total income for the year = Rs. 1,885,000

Zakat = Rs. 47,125

Taxable income = 1,885,000 – 47,125

= Rs. 1,837,875

This amount lies in Taxable income slab at Sr. # 6

i.e Rate of tax is Rs. 140000 + 17.5% of the amount exceeding Rs. 1,800,000

∴ Income exceeding Rs. 1,800,000 = 1,837,875 – 1,800,000

= Rs. 37875

$$\text{Income tax @ 17.5\%} = \frac{37875 \times 17.5}{100}$$

= Rs. 6628.12

∴ Total income tax = 140,000 + 6628.12

= Rs. 146628.12

**Example 3:** The annual income of a person is Rs. 2,085,000. He paid zakat Rs. 52,125. Calculate his income tax on his income.

**Solution:**

Total income of a year = Rs. 2,085,000

Zakat = Rs. 52,125

Taxable income = 2,085,000 – 52,125

= Rs. 2,032,875

This amount falls in the taxable income slab at Sr. # 6

i.e, Rs. 140,000 + 17.5% of the amount exceeding Rs. 1,800,000

Amount exceeding Rs. 1,800,000 = 2,032,875 – 1,800,000

= Rs. 232,875

$$\text{Income tax @ 17.5\% of Rs. 232,875} = \frac{232875 \times 175}{100 \times 10} = \text{Rs. 40,753.125}$$

= Rs. 40,753

∴ Total income tax to be paid = 140,000 + 40,753 (From slab at Sr. # 6)

= Rs. 180,753

**Example 4:** A person earns Rs. 385,000 in a year. Calculate his income tax for the year.

**Solution:**

Annual income = Rs. 385,000

Since this amount falls in the taxable income slab at Sr. # 1

i.e, 0% tax, it means he has to pay no income tax for the year.

**EXERCISE 4.8**

Solve the following questions by using the table of taxable income slabs.

1. The annual income of a person is Rs. 420,000. Calculate his income tax when tax rate is 5%.
2. Calculate income tax of a person whose annual income is Rs. 1,085,000 and tax rate is 10%.
3. Annual salary of a person is Rs. 1,475,000. Calculate the annual income tax when tax rate is 12.5%.
4. Calculate income tax of a person whose annual income is Rs. 1,650,000. The rate of tax is 15%.
5. The annual income of a person is Rs. 2,350,000. Calculate his income tax when tax rate is 17.5%.
6. Calculate income tax of a person whose annual income is Rs. 2,875,000. The rate of tax is 20%.
7. A salaried person has his annual income Rs. 3,375,000. Calculate his income tax when tax rate is 22.5%.
8. The annual income of an individual is Rs. 3,987,500. The tax rate is 25%. Calculate the income tax of the person on his income.
9. A person earns Rs. 12,735,000 from his business. Calculate his income tax on his income when tax rate is 30% of tax has been deducted at source Rs. 200,000, how much money he has to pay now?



**REVIEW EXERCISE 4**

1. Four options are given against each statement. Encircle the correct one.
  
2. Define the following:
 

i. Proportion.	ii. Compound Proportion	iii. Partnership
iv. Commercial Bank	v. Negotiable instruments.	
3. What is difference between cheque , Demand Draft and Pay order.
4. The price of a tricycle is *Rs.4000*. If *16%* sales tax is charged, then calculate the amount of sales tax on 30 such tricycles.
5. A person has earned *Rs.8,000,000* in a year. The tax deducted at source is *Rs.150,000* and Zakat deducted *Rs. 200,000* and tax rate *30%*. Calculate his income tax for the year. (Use taxable income slabs)
6. Ammar insured his life for *Rs.1,000,000* at the rate of *5%* per year. Find the amount of annual premium he has to pay.
7. A factory marked prices of the articles *25%* above the cost price.The Cost Price of an article is *Rs.5000* and its selling price is *Rs.4500*. Find the discount % given to the customer.

**SUMMARY**

- The relationship between two or more proportions is known as compound proportion.
- A business in which two or more participants and are responsible for profit or loss is called partnership.
- When a person dies, then the assets left by him is called inheritance.
- Banking is a business activity of accepting and safeguarding the money and earning a profit by lending out this money.
- The function of a bank which accepts deposits, provides loans and services to the clients is known as commercial banking.

- An account on the basis of profit and loss is known as PLS bank account.
- Current deposited account is usually opened by businessmen who have number of deposits and withdrawals regularly. It is a running account without any interest.
- PLS term deposit holder shares profit and loss on the rate determined by the bank after every six months.
- A foreign currency account is the account maintained in the currency other than Pakistani currency.
- A cheque is a written order that instructs a bank to pay the specific amount from a specified account to the holder of the cheque.
- Demand draft is a method used by individuals to make transfer payments from one bank account to another.
- Pay order is a document which instructs a bank to pay a certain amount to a third party and it is issued by the bank on the request of its customer.
- Online banking is the use of internet by the banks to assist their customers.
- An automated teller machine (ATM) is an electric device that allows a bank's customers to make cash and check account balance.
- Credit card is a thin plastic card used to buy articles. Visa and Master cards are used worldwide for making payments. These are the names of global credit companies.
- Debit Card is a plastic payment card that provides card holder electronic access to his bank account at anytime and anywhere.
- The extra money which the bank pays for the use of our amount is called profit on the deposit.
- The extra money which a bank receives from a client on borrowed money is known as mark-up.
- Principal amount is the amount we borrow or deposit in the bank.
- The rate at which the bank gives share to its account holder is known as profit/mark-up rate.
- The time for which a particular amount is invested in a business is known as period

CHAPTER

5

# POLYNOMIALS

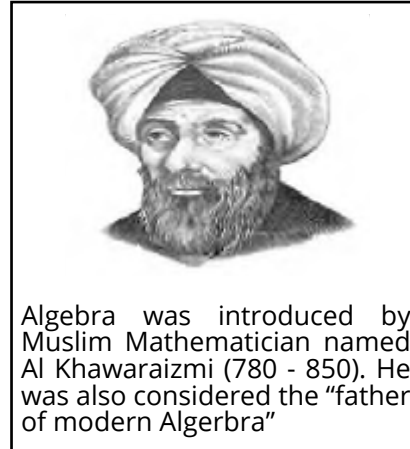
*Animation 5.1: Algebraic expression*  
*Source & Credit: elearn.punjab*

---

## 5.1 ALGEBRAIC EXPRESSIONS:

An algebraic expression is made up of symbols and signs of algebra. Algebra helps us to make general formula because algebra

is linked with arithmetic. For example,  $x^2 + 2x + 1$  and  $\sqrt{x} - \frac{1}{\sqrt{x}}$   $x \neq 0$  are algebraic expressions.



### 5.1.1 Recall Constant, Variable, Literal, and Algebraic Expression

- **Constant:**

A symbol that has a fixed numerical value is called a constant. For example in  $5x + 1$ , 5 and 7 are constants.

- **Variable:**

Variable is a symbol, usually a letter that is used to represent a quantity that may have an infinite number of values are also called unknowns. For example, in  $x^2 + y + 3z$ ;  $x$ ,  $y$  and  $z$  are variables.

- **Literal:**

The alphabets that are used to represent constants or coefficients are called literals. For example, in  $ax^2 + bx + c$ ;  $a$ ,  $b$  and  $c$  are literals whereas  $x$  is a variable.

- **Algebraic Expression:**

An expression which connects variables and constants by algebraic operations of addition, subtraction, multiplication and division is called an algebraic expression. A few algebraic expressions are given below:

(i) 14      (ii)  $x + 2y$       (iii)  $4x - y + 5$       (iv)  $\frac{-2}{x} + y$       (v)  $3y + 7z - \frac{z}{7}$

## 5.2 POLYNOMIAL

### 5.2.1 Definitions

- **Polynomial**

A polynomial expression or simply a polynomial is an algebraic expression consisting of one or more terms in each of which the exponent of the variable is zero or a positive integer.

For example, 13,  $-x$ ,  $5x + 3y$ ,  $x^2 - 3x + 1$  are all polynomials.

The following algebraic expressions are not polynomials.

$$x^{-2}, \frac{1}{y}, x^3 - x^{-3} + 3, x^2 + y^{-4} - 7 \text{ and } \frac{x}{y} + 5x$$

- **Degree of a Polynomial**

Degree of a polynomial is the degree of the highest degree of a part (term) in a polynomial.

Degree of a term in a polynomial is the sum of the exponents on the variables in a single term. The degree of  $2x^3y^4$  is 7 as  $3 + 4 = 7$

- **Coefficient of a Polynomial**

In a term the number multiplied by the variable is the coefficient of the variable.

In  $4x + 6y$ , 4 is coefficient of  $x$  and 6 is coefficient of  $y$ .

### 5.2.2 Recognition of Polynomial in one, two and more Variables

(a) **Polynomials in one Variable**

Consider the following Polynomials:

(i)  $x^4 + 4$       (ii)  $x^2 - x + 1$       (iii)  $y^3 + y^2 - y + 1$       (iv)  $y^2 - y + 8$

In polynomials (i) and (ii)  $x$  is the variable and in polynomial (iii) and (iv)  $y$  is the variable.

All these polynomials are polynomials in one variable.

(b) **Polynomials in two Variables**

Consider the following Polynomials:

(i)  $x^2 + y + 2$       (ii)  $x^2y + xy + 6$       (iii)  $x^2z + xz + z$       (iv)  $x^2z + 8$

In polynomials (i) and (ii)  $x, y$  are the variables. In polynomials (iii) and (iv)  $x, z$  are the variables. All these polynomials are in two variables.

### (c) Polynomials in more Variables

Similarly  $x^2yz + xy^2z + xy + 7$  is a polynomial in three variables  $x, y$  and  $z$

### 5.2.3 Recognition of polynomials of various degrees (e.g. linear, quadratic, cubic and biquadratic polynomials)

#### (a) Linear Polynomials:

Consider the following polynomials:

$$(i) \quad x + 2 \quad (ii) \quad x \quad (iii) \quad x + 2y \quad (iv) \quad x + z$$

In all these polynomials the degree of the variables  $x, y$  or  $z$  is one. Such types of polynomials are linear polynomials.

#### (b) Quadratic Polynomials:

Let us write a few polynomials that the highest exponent or sum of exponents is always 2.

$$(i) \quad x^2 \quad (ii) \quad x^2 - 3 \quad (iii) \quad xy + 1$$

In the first two polynomials  $x$  is the variable and its degree is 2. In the third polynomial  $x, y$  are the variables and sum of their exponents is  $1 + 1 = 2$ . Its degree is also 2. Therefore polynomials of the type (i), (ii) and (iii) are quadratic polynomials.

#### (c) Cubic Polynomials:

Consider the following polynomials:

$$(i) \quad 5x^3 + x^2 - 4x + 1 \quad (ii) \quad x^2y + xy^2 + y - 2$$

The degree of each one of the polynomial is 3. These polynomials are called cubic polynomials.

#### (d) Biquadratic Polynomials:

Let us take a few polynomials of 4 degrees.

$$(i) \quad x^4 + x^3y + x^2y^2 + y^3 - 1 \quad (ii) \quad y^4 + y^3 - y^2 - y + 8$$

These are biquadratic polynomials.

### EXERCISE 5.1

- Write the constants given in the expression.  
(i)  $3x + 4$     (ii)  $2x^3 - 1$     (iii)  $5y + 2x$     (iv)  $7y^2 - 8$
- Write the variables taken in the equations.  
(i)  $2x - 1 = 0$     (ii)  $y + x = 3$   
(iii)  $x^2 - x - 1 = 0$     (iv)  $7y^2 - 2y + 3 = 0$
- Write the literals used in the equations.  
(i)  $ax^2 + bx + c - y = 0$     (ii)  $cx^2 + dx = 0$   
(iii)  $bx + d = 0$     (iv)  $ay^2 + d = 0$
- Separate the polynomial expressions and expressions that are not polynomials  
(i)  $x^2 + x - 1$     (ii)  $x^2y + xy^2 + 7$   
(iii)  $x^2 + y + 7$     (iv)  $\frac{x}{y^2} + 1 - \frac{y^2}{x}$   
(v)  $x^3 - x^2 + y - 1$     (vi)  $x^4 + x^2 + 5x + \frac{1}{2}$
- What constants are used in the following expressions?  
(i)  $7x - 6y + 3z$     (ii)  $5x^2 - 3$   
(iii)  $8x^2 + 2y + 5$     (iv)  $9y + 3x - 2z$
- Write the degree of the polynomials given below.  
(i)  $x + 1$     (ii)  $x^2 + x$   
(iii)  $x^3 - xy + 1$     (iv)  $x^2y^2 + x^3 + y^2 - 1$
- Separate the polynomials as linear, quadratic, cubic and biquadratic.  
(i)  $3x + 1$     (ii)  $x^2 - 2$     (iii)  $y^2 - y$   
(iv)  $x + y$     (v)  $x^3 + x^2 - 2$     (vi)  $x^4 + x^3 + x^2$   
(vii)  $x^2y^2 + xy$     (viii)  $x^2 + xy + 8$

### 5.3 OPERATIONS ON POLYNOMIALS

#### 5.3.1 Addition, Subtraction, and Multiplication of Polynomials

##### (i) Addition of algebraic expressions (Polynomials)

If  $P(x)$  and  $Q(x)$  are two polynomials, then their addition is represented as  $P(x) + Q(x)$ . In order to add two or more than two polynomials, we first write the polynomials in descending

or ascending order and like terms each in the form of columns. Finally we add the coefficients of like terms.

**Example:** Add  $3x^3 + 5x^2 - 4x$ ,  $x^3 - 6 + 3x^2$  and  $6 - x^2 - x$

**Solution:**

$$\begin{array}{r} 3x^3 + 5x^2 - 4x + 0 \\ x^3 + 3x^2 + 0x - 6 \\ 0x^3 - x^2 - x + 6 \\ \hline \text{Sum: } 4x^3 + 7x^2 - 5x \end{array}$$

### (ii) Subtraction of polynomials

The subtraction of two polynomials  $P$  and  $Q$  is represented by  $P - Q$  or  $[P + (-Q)]$ . If the sum of two polynomials is zero then  $P$  and  $Q$  are called additive inverse of each other.

$$\text{If } P = x + y \text{ and } Q = -x - y,$$

$$\text{Then } P + Q = (x + y) + (-x - y) = 0$$

Like addition we write the polynomials in descending or ascending order and then change the sign of every term of the polynomial which is to be subtracted.

**Example:** Subtract  $2x^3 - 4x^2 + 8 - x$  from  $5x^4 + x - 3x^2 - 9$

**Solution:** Arrange the terms of the polynomials in descending order.

$$\begin{array}{r} 5x^4 + 0x^3 - 3x^2 + x - 9 \\ \pm 0x^4 \pm 2x^3 \mp 4x^2 \mp x \pm 8 \\ \hline \text{Difference: } 5x^4 - 2x^3 + x^2 + 2x - 17 \end{array}$$

### (iii) Multiplication of polynomials

Multiplication of polynomials is explained through examples

**Example:** Find the product of  $4x^2$  and  $5x^3$

**Solution:**  $(4x^2)(5x^3) = 4 \times 5(x^2 \times x^3)$  (Associative Law)  
 $= (20)(x^2 \times x^3)$

$$\begin{aligned} &= 20 x^{2+3} && \text{(Law of exponents)} \\ &= 20 x^5 \end{aligned}$$

**Example 2:** Find the product of  $3x^2 + 2x - 4$  and  $5x^2 - 3x + 3$

**Solution:** Horizontal Method

$$\begin{aligned} &(3x^2 + 2x - 4)(5x^2 - 3x + 3) \\ &= 3x^2(5x^2 - 3x + 3) + 2x(5x^2 - 3x + 3) - 4(5x^2 - 3x + 3) \\ &= 15x^4 - 9x^3 + 9x^2 + 10x^3 - 6x^2 + 6x - 20x^2 + 12x - 12 \\ &= 15x^4 + (10 - 9)x^3 + (9 - 6 - 20)x^2 + (6 + 12)x - 12 \\ &= 15x^4 + x^3 - 17x^2 + 18x - 12 \end{aligned}$$

**Example 3:** Multiply  $2x - 3$  with  $5x + 6$

**Solution:** Vertical Method

$$\begin{array}{r} 5x + 6 \\ \times 2x - 3 \\ \hline 10x^2 + 12x \\ - 15x - 18 \\ \hline 10x^2 - 3x - 18 \end{array}$$

**Note:** The product of two polynomials is also a polynomial whose degree is equal to the sum of the degrees of the two polynomials.

### 5.3.2 Division of Polynomials

Division is the reverse process of multiplication.

The method of division of polynomials is explained through examples.

**Example 1:** Divide  $(-8x^5)$  by  $(-4x^3)$

**Solution:**  $(-8x^5) \div (-4x^3) = (-8x^5) \times \frac{1}{-4x^3}$   
 $= 2x^{5-3}$   
 $= 2x^2$

**Example 2:** Divide  $x^3 - 2x + 4$  by  $x + 2$

**Solution:**

$$\begin{array}{r}
 x^2 - 2x + 2 \\
 x + 2 \overline{) x^3 + 0x^2 - 2x + 4} \\
 \underline{\pm x^3 \pm 2x^2} \phantom{+ 4} \\
 -2x^2 - 2x \phantom{+ 4} \\
 \underline{\mp 2x^2 \mp 4x} \phantom{+ 4} \\
 2x + 4 \\
 \underline{\pm 2x \pm 4} \\
 0
 \end{array}$$

**Note:** If a polynomial is exactly divisible by another polynomial then the remainder is zero.

### EXERCISE 5.2

- Add:
  - $1 + 2x + 3x^2, 3x - 4 - 2x^2, x^2 - 5x + 4$
  - $a^3 + 2a^2 - 6a + 7, a^3 + 2a + 5, 2a^3 + 2a - a^2 - 8$
  - $a^3 - 2a^2b + b^3, 4a^3 + 2ab^2 + 6a^2b, 2b^3 - 5a^3 - 4a^2b$
- Subtract  $P$  from  $Q$  when,
  - $P = 3x^4 + 5x^3 + 2x^2 - x; Q = 4x^4 + 2x^2 + x^3 - x + 1$
  - $P = 2x + 3y - 4z - 1; Q = 2y + 3x - 4z + 1$
  - $P = a^3 + 2a^2b + 3ab^2 + b^3; Q = a^3 - 3a^2b + 3ab^2 - b^3$
- Find the value of  $x - 2y + 3z$  where  $x = 2a^2 - a^3 + 3a + 4$ ,  
 $y = 2a^3 - 3a^2 + 2 - 2a$  and  $z = a^4 + 3a^3 - 6 - 5a^2$
- The sum of two polynomials is  $x^2 + 2x - y^2$ . If one polynomial is  $x^2 - 2xy + 3$ , then find the other polynomial.
- Subtract  $4x + 6 - 2x^2$  from the sum of  $x^3 + x^2 - 2x$  and  $2x^3 + 3x - 7$
- Find the product of the following polynomials.
  - $(x + 3)(x^2 - 3x + 9)$       (ii)  $(3x^2 - 7x + 5)(4x^2 - 2x + 1)$
  - $(a + b + c)(a^2 + b^2 + c^2 - ab - bc - ca)$

- If  $P = x^2 - yz, Q = y^2 - xz$  and  $R = z^2 - xy$ , then find  $PQ, QR, PR$  and  $PQR$ .
- Simplify:
  - $(x^2 + x - 6) \div (x - 2)$
  - $(x^3 - 19x - 30) \div (x + 3)$
  - $(x^5 - y^5) \div (x - y)$
  - $(x^3 + x^2 - 14x - 24) \div (x + 2)$
  - $(16a^5 + 4a^3 - 4a^2 + 3a - 1) \div (4a^2 - 2a + 1)$
  - $(x^4 - 3x^2y^2 + y^4) \div (x^2 + xy - y^2)$
- What should be added to  $4x^3 - 10x^2 + 12x + 6$  so that it becomes exactly divisible by  $2x + 1$ ?
- The product of two polynomials is  $6y^3 - 11y^2 + 6y - 1$ . If one polynomial is  $3y^2 - 4y + 1$ , then find the other polynomial.
- For what value of  $p$  the polynomial  $3x^3 - 7x^2 - 9x + p$  becomes exactly divisible by  $x - 3$ ?

### REVIEW EXERCISE 5

- Four options are given below each statement. Encircle the correct one.
- Indicate polynomial and their degree in the following table.

Sr. #	Algebraic Expression	Polynomial	Degree of polynomial
i	$2.3 + 1.2x$		
ii	$k^2 + 5k^{-1} + 6$		
iii	$-9$		
iv	$2c^4 + 5b + \frac{6}{7}$		

- Find the sum of the following polynomials.
  - $2a + 3b + c, 3a - b - c, 4b + 5c, -2a + 3c$  and  $-b + c$
  - $9z + 3y^2 - 5x^3, -z - 2y^2 - 4x^3, z - x^3$  and  $-2z + 3y^2$



4. Solve:

i.  $(-2x^2 + 5y^2 - 3z^2) - (5x^2 - 3y^2 - 6z^2)$

ii.  $(6x^3 + x^2 - 26) - (9 + 3x^2 - 5x^3)$

iii.  $(y^2 - 5)(-y^2 + 5)$

iv.  $(3a + 2b)(4a^2 - 7b + 5)$

v.  $(x^4 + x - 2) \div (x - 1)$

### SUMMARY

- An expression which connects variables and constants by algebraic operations of addition, subtraction, multiplication and division is called an algebraic expression.
- Constants are algebraic symbols that have a fixed value and do not change.
- A symbol in algebra which can assume different numerical values (numbers) is called a variable.
- A literal is a value that is expressed as itself. For example, the number 25 or the word "speed" are both literals.
- An algebraic expression which has finite number of terms and the exponents of variables are whole numbers, is called polynomial.
- A polynomial is either zero or can be written as the sum of a finite number of non-zero terms.
- In a polynomial coefficient is a number or symbol multiplied with a variable in an algebraic term.
- The polynomials of degree one are called linear polynomials.
- The polynomials of degree two are called quadratic polynomials.
- The polynomials of degree three are called cubic polynomials.
- The polynomials of degree four are called biquadratic polynomial.

CHAPTER



# Factorization, Simultaneous Equations

## 6.1 BASIC ALGEBRAIC FORMULA

$$(a+b)^2 = a^2 + 2ab + b^2$$

**Example:** Evaluate  $(107)^2$  by using formula

**Solution:**

$$\begin{aligned}(107)^2 &= (100 + 7)^2 \\ &= (100)^2 + 2(100 \times 7) + (7)^2 \\ &= 10000 + 1400 + 49 \\ &= 11449\end{aligned}$$

- $(a - b)^2 = a^2 - 2ab + b^2$

**Example:** Using the formula, evaluate  $(87)^2$

**Solution:**

$$\begin{aligned}(87)^2 &= (90 - 3)^2 \\ &= (90)^2 - 2(90 \times 3) + (3)^2 \\ &= 8100 - 540 + 9 \\ &= 7569\end{aligned}$$

- $a^2 - b^2 = (a+b)(a-b)$

**Example:** Using the formula, evaluate  $107 \times 93$

**Solution:**

$$\begin{aligned}107 \times 93 &= (100 + 7)(100 - 7) \\ &= (100)^2 - (7)^2 \\ &= 10000 - 49 \\ &= 9951\end{aligned}$$

**Example:** Find the value of  $x^2 + \frac{1}{x^2}$  and  $x^4 + \frac{1}{x^4}$  when  $x - \frac{1}{x} = 2$

**Solution:** Here  $x - \frac{1}{x} = 2$

$$\left(x - \frac{1}{x}\right)^2 = (2)^2 \quad \text{(Taking square of both the sides)}$$

$$\text{or} \quad x^2 - 2(x)\left(\frac{1}{x}\right) + \left(\frac{1}{x}\right)^2 = 4$$

$$\text{or} \quad x^2 - 2 + \frac{1}{x^2} = 4$$

$$\text{or} \quad x^2 + \frac{1}{x^2} = 4 + 2$$

$$\text{or} \quad x^2 + \frac{1}{x^2} = 6$$

$$\text{or} \quad \left(x^2 + \frac{1}{x^2}\right)^2 = (6)^2 \text{ (Again taking square of both sides)}$$

$$\text{or} \quad (x^2)^2 + 2(x^2)\left(\frac{1}{x^2}\right) + \left(\frac{1}{x^2}\right)^2 = 36$$

$$\text{or} \quad x^4 + 2 + \frac{1}{x^4} = 36$$

$$\text{or} \quad x^4 + \frac{1}{x^4} = 36 - 2$$

$$x^4 + \frac{1}{x^4} = 34$$

### EXERCISE 6.1

Solve the following questions by using formulas:

1. Evaluate square of each of the following:

(i) 53

(ii) 77

(iii) 509

(iv) 1006

2. Evaluate each of the following:

(i)  $(57)^2$                       (ii)  $(95)^2$                       (iii)  $(598)^2$                       (iv)  $(1997)^2$

3. Evaluate:

(i)  $46 \times 54$                       (ii)  $197 \times 203$                       (iii)  $999 \times 1001$                       (iv)  $0.96 \times 1.04$

4. (i) Find the value of  $x^2 + \frac{1}{x^2}$ , when  $x + \frac{1}{x} = 7$

(ii) Find the value of  $x^2 + \frac{1}{x^2}$ , when  $x - \frac{1}{x} = 3$

(iii) Find the value of  $x^4 + \frac{1}{x^4}$ , when  $x - \frac{1}{x} = 1$

## 6.2 FACTORIZATION

Factors of an expression are the expressions whose product is the given expression.

The process of expressing the given expressions as a product of its factors is called 'Factorization' or 'Factorizing'.

(i) Type  $Ka + Kb + Kc$ :

**Example 1 :** Factorize  $2x - 4y + 6z$

**Solution:**  $2x - 4y + 6z$   
 $= 2(x - 2y + 3z)$  '2' is a factor common to each term

**Example 2 :** Factorize  $x^2 - xy + xz$

**Solution:**  $x^2 - xy + xz$   
 $= x(x - y + z)$

**Example 3 :** Factorize  $3x^2 - 6xy$

**Solution:**  $3x^2 - 6xy$   
 $= 3x(x - 2y)$

### EXERCISE 6.2

Factorize the following:

- |                                  |                                   |
|----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. $3x - 9y$                     | 2. $xy + xz$                      |
| 3. $6ab - 14ac$                  | 4. $3m^3np - 6m^2n$               |
| 5. $30x^3 - 45xy$                | 6. $17x^2y^2 - 51$                |
| 7. $4x^3 + 3x^2 + 2x$            | 8. $2p^2 - 4p^3 + 8p$             |
| 9. $x^3y - x^2y + xy^2$          | 10. $7x^4 - 14x^2y + 21xy^3$      |
| 11. $x^2y^2z^2 - xyz^2 + xyz$    | 12. $4x^3y^2 - 8xy + 4xy^3$       |
| 13. $xy^4 - 3xy^3 - 6xy^2$       | 14. $x^2y^2z + x^2yz^2 + xy^2z^2$ |
| 15. $77x^2y - 33xy^2 - 55x^2y^2$ | 16. $5x^5 + 10x^4 + 15x^3$        |

(ii) Type  $ac + ad + bc + bd$ :

Consider the following examples for such cases.

**Example 1 :** Factorize:  $3x + cx + 3c + c^2$

**Solution:**  $3x + cx + 3c + c^2$   
 $= (3x + cx) + (3c + c^2)$   
 $= x(3 + c) + c(3 + c)$   
 $= (3 + c)(x + c)$

**Example 2 :** Factorize:  $2x^2y - 2xy + 4y^2x - 4y^2$

**Solution:**  $2x^2y - 2xy + 4y^2x - 4y^2$   
 $= 2y(x^2 - x + 2yx - 2y)$   
 $= 2y[x(x - 1) + 2y(x - 1)]$   
 $= 2y(x - 1)(x + 2y)$



## EXERCISE 6.3

Factorize the following:

- |                                   |                             |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. $ax - by + bx - ay$            | 2. $2ab - 6bc - a + 3c$     |
| 3. $x^2 + 2x - 3x - 6$            | 4. $x^2 + 5x - 2x - 10$     |
| 5. $x^2 - 7x + 2x - 14$           | 6. $x^2 + 3x - 4x - 12$     |
| 7. $y^2 - 9y + 3y - 27$           | 8. $x^2 - 8x - 4x + 32$     |
| 9. $x^2 - 7x - 5x + 35$           | 10. $x^2 - 13x - 2x + 26$   |
| 11. $a(x - y) - b(x - y)$         | 12. $y(y - a) - b(y - a)$   |
| 13. $a^2(pq - rs) + b^2(pq - rs)$ | 14. $ab(x + y) + cd(x + y)$ |

(iii) Type  $a^2 \pm 2ab + b^2$ :

Consider the following examples for such cases.

**Example 1 :** Factorize:  $9a^2 + 30ab + 25b^2$

**Solution:**

$$\begin{aligned} & 9a^2 + 30ab + 25b^2 \\ &= (3a)^2 + 2(3a \times 5b) + (5b)^2 \\ &= (3a + 5b)^2 \end{aligned}$$

**Example 2 :** Factorize:  $16x^2 - 64x + 64$

**Solution:**

$$\begin{aligned} & 16x^2 - 64x + 64 \\ &= 16(x^2 - 4x + 4) \\ &= 16[(x)^2 - 2(2)(x) + (2)^2] \\ &= 16(x - 2)^2 \end{aligned}$$

**Example 3 :** Factorize:  $8x^3y + 8x^2y^2 + 2xy^3$

**Solution:**

$$\begin{aligned} & 8x^3y + 8x^2y^2 + 2xy^3 \\ &= 2xy(4x^2 + 4xy + y^2) \\ &= 2xy[(2x)^2 + 2(2x)(y) + (y^2)] \\ &= 2xy(2x + y)^2 \end{aligned}$$

## EXERCISE 6.4

Factorize:

1.  $x^2 + 14x + 49$

2.  $9a^2 + 12ab + 4b^2$

3.  $16 + 24a + 9a^2$

4.  $25x^2 + 80xy + 64y^2$

5.  $7a^4 + 84a^2 + 252$

6.  $4a^2 + 120a + 900$

7.  $x^2 - 34x + 289$

8.  $49x^2 - 84x + 36$

9.  $x^2 - 18xy + 81y^2$

10.  $a^4 - 26a^2 + 169$

11.  $2a^2 - 64a + 512$

12.  $1 - 6a^2b^2c + 9a^4b^4c^2$

13.  $4x^4 + 20x^3yz + 25x^2y^2z^2$

14.  $\frac{9}{16}x^2 + xy + \frac{4}{9}y^2$

15.  $\frac{49}{64}x^2 - 2xy + \frac{64}{49}y^2$

16.  $\frac{a^2}{b^2}x^2 - \frac{2ac}{bd}xy + \frac{c^2y^2}{d^2}$

17.  $16x^6 - 16x^5 + 4x^4$

18.  $a^4b^4x^2 - 2a^2b^2c^2d^2xy + c^4d^4y^2$

(iv) Type  $a^2 - b^2$ :

Consider the following examples for such cases.

**Example 1 :** Factorize:  $25x^2 - 64$ 

**Solution:**

$$\begin{aligned} 25x^2 - 64 &= (5x)^2 - (8)^2 \\ &= (5x + 8)(5x - 8) \end{aligned}$$

**Example 2 :** Factorize:  $16y^2b - 81bx^2$ 

**Solution:**

$$\begin{aligned} 16y^2b - 81bx^2 &= b(16y^2 - 81x^2) \\ &= b[(4y)^2 - (9x)^2] \\ &= b(4y + 9x)(4y - 9x) \end{aligned}$$

**Example 3 :** Factorize:  $(3x - 5y)^2 - 49z^2$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Solution:} \quad & (3x - 5y)^2 - 49z^2 \\ & = (3x - 5y)^2 - (7z)^2 \\ & = (3x - 5y + 7z)(3x - 5y - 7z) \end{aligned}$$

**Example 4 :** Factorize:  $36(x + y)^2 - 25(x - y)^2$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Solution:} \quad & 36(x + y)^2 - 25(x - y)^2 \\ & = [6(x + y)]^2 - [5(x - y)]^2 \\ & = [6(x + y) + 5(x - y)][6(x + y) - 5(x - y)] \\ & = (11x + y)(x + 11y) \end{aligned}$$

**Example 5 :** Use formula to evaluate:  $(677)^2 - (323)^2$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Solution:} \quad & (677)^2 - (323)^2 \\ & = (677 + 323)(677 - 323) \\ & = 1000 \times 354 \\ & = 354000 \end{aligned}$$

**Example 6 :** Simplify:  $\frac{0.987 \times 0.987 - 0.643 \times 0.643}{0.987 + 0.643}$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Solution:} \quad & \frac{0.987 \times 0.987 - 0.643 \times 0.643}{0.987 + 0.643} \\ & = \frac{(0.987)^2 - (0.643)^2}{0.987 + 0.643} \\ & = \frac{(0.987 + 0.643)(0.987 - 0.643)}{0.987 + 0.643} \\ & = 0.987 - 0.643 \\ & = 0.344 \end{aligned}$$

## EXERCISE 6.5

Factorize the following expressions:

1.  $9 - x^2$

2.  $-6 + 6y^2$

3.  $16x^2y^2 - 25a^2b^2$

4.  $x^3y - xy^3$

5.  $16a^2 - 400b^2$

6.  $a^2b^3 - 64a^2b$

7.  $7xy^2 - 343x$

8.  $5x^3 - 45x$

9.  $11(a + b)^2 - 99c^2$

10.  $75 - 3(a - b)^2$

11.  $\left(x - \frac{9}{5}\right)^2 - \frac{36}{25}y^2$

12.  $25\left(x + \frac{5}{4}\right)^2 - 16\left(x + \frac{7}{4}\right)^2$

13.  $16(a + b)^2 - 49(a - b)^2$

14.  $36\left(x - \frac{1}{4}\right)^2 - 64\left(x - \frac{5}{4}\right)^2$

Evaluate the following:

15.  $(371)^2 - (129)^2$

16.  $(674.17)^2 - (325.83)^2$

17.  $\frac{(0.567)^2 - (0.433)^2}{0.567 - 0.433}$

18.  $\frac{(0.409)^2 - (0.391)^2}{0.409 - 0.391}$

(V) Type  $a^2 \pm 2ab + b^2 - c^2$ :

This type can be explained through the following examples.

**Example 1 :**  $a^2 - 2ab + b^2 - 4c^2$

**Solution:**

$$\begin{aligned} & (a^2 - 2ab + b^2) - 4c^2 \\ &= (a - b)^2 - (2c)^2 \\ &= (a - b - 2c)(a - b + 2c) \end{aligned}$$

**Example 2 :**  $4a^2 + 4ab + b^2 - 9c^2$

**Solution:**  $4a^2 + 4ab + b^2 - 9c^2$

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= (2a)^2 + 2(2a)(b) + (b)^2 - 9c^2 \\
 &= (2a + b)^2 - (3c)^2 \\
 &= (2a + b - 3c)(2a + b + 3c)
 \end{aligned}$$

## EXERCISE 6.6

Factorize:

1.  $a^2 + 2ab + b^2 - c^2$

2.  $a^2 + 6ab + 9b^2 - 16c^2$

3.  $a^2 + b^2 + 2ab - 9a^2b^2$

4.  $x^2 - 4xy + 4y^2 - 9x^2y^2$

5.  $9a^2 - 6ab + b^2 - 16c^2$

## 6.3 MANIPULATION OF ALGEBRAIC EXPRESSION

- Formula  $(a + b)^3 = a^3 + 3ab(a + b) + b^3$

**Example :** Expand  $(3a + 4b)^3$

**Solution:**

$$\begin{aligned}
 &(3a + 4b)^3 \\
 &= (3a)^3 + 3(3a)(4b)(3a + 4b) + (4b)^3 \\
 &= 27a^3 + 36ab(3a + 4b) + 64b^3 \\
 &= 27a^3 + 108a^2b + 144ab^2 + 64b^3
 \end{aligned}$$

- Formula  $(a - b)^3 = a^3 - 3ab(a - b) - b^3$

This type can be explained with the following examples.

**Example :** Expand  $(2a - 3b)^3$

**Solution:**

$$\begin{aligned}
 &(2a - 3b)^3 \\
 &= (2a)^3 - 3(2a)(3b)(2a - 3b) - (3b)^3 \\
 &= 8a^3 - 18ab(2a - 3b) - 27b^3 \\
 &= 8a^3 - 36a^2b + 54ab^2 - 27b^3
 \end{aligned}$$

**Example :** If  $x + \frac{1}{x} = 5$ , then find the value of  $x^3 + \frac{1}{x^3}$

**Solution:** We have,  $x + \frac{1}{x} = 5$

$$\left(x + \frac{1}{x}\right)^3 = (x)^3 + 3(x)\left(\frac{1}{x}\right) \times \left(x + \frac{1}{x}\right) + \left(\frac{1}{x}\right)^3$$

$$\left(x + \frac{1}{x}\right)^3 = x^3 + 3\left(x + \frac{1}{x}\right) + \frac{1}{x^3}$$

$$\left(x + \frac{1}{x}\right)^3 = x^3 + \frac{1}{x^3} + 3\left(x + \frac{1}{x}\right)$$

$$(5)^3 = x^3 + \frac{1}{x^3} + 3(5) \quad \therefore \left(x + \frac{1}{x}\right)^3 = 5$$

$$125 = x^3 + \frac{1}{x^3} + 15$$

$$\Rightarrow x^3 + \frac{1}{x^3} = 125 - 15$$

$$\text{thus, } x^3 + \frac{1}{x^3} = 110$$

### EXERCISE 6.7

1. Find the cube of the following:

(i)  $x + 4$

(ii)  $2m + 1$

(iii)  $a - 2b$

(iv)  $5x - 1$

(v)  $2a + b$

(vi)  $3x + 10$

(vii)  $2m + 3n$

(viii)  $4 - 3a$

(ix)  $3x + 3y$

(x)  $7 + 2b$

(xi)  $4x - 2y$

(xii)  $5m + 4n$

2. If  $x + \frac{1}{x} = 8$ , then find the value of  $x^3 + \frac{1}{x^3}$

3. If  $x - \frac{1}{x} = 3$ , then find the value of  $x^3 - \frac{1}{x^3}$

4. If  $x + \frac{1}{x} = 7$ , then find the value of  $x^3 + \frac{1}{x^3}$



5. If  $x - \frac{1}{x} = 2$ , then find the value of  $x^3 - \frac{1}{x^3}$
6. Find the cube of the following by using formula.  
(i) 13                      (ii) 103                      (iii) 0.99

## 6.4 SIMULTANEOUS LINEAR EQUATIONS

If two or more linear equations consisting of same set of variables are satisfied simultaneously by the same values of the variables, then these equations are called simultaneous linear equations.

### 6.4.1 Recognizing Simultaneous Linear Equations in one and Two Variables

We know that a linear equation is an algebraic equation in which each term is either a constant or a variable or the product of a constant or a variable. The standard form of linear equation consisting of one variable is:

$$ax + b, \quad [a, b \in \mathbb{R}]$$

Similarly, a linear equation in two variables is of the form  $ax + by = c$ , where  $a$ ,  $b$  and  $c$  are constants. Two linear equations considered together, form a system of linear equations. For example

$x + y = 2$  and  $x - y = 1$  is a system of two linear equations with two variables  $x$  and  $y$ . This system of two linear equations is known as the simplest form of linear system which can be written in general form as:

$$\begin{aligned} a_1x + b_1y &= c_1 \\ a_2x + b_2y &= c_2 \end{aligned}$$

### 6.4.2 Concept of Formation of Linear Equation in Two Variables

Statements involving two unknown can be written in algebraic form as explained in the following examples.

**Example:** Write an equation for each statement.

- (i) The price of a book and 3 pencils is 90 rupees.
- (ii) Sum of two numbers is 5.
- (iii) The weight of Iram is half of the weight of Ali.

**Solution:** (i) Price of a book and 3 pencils = Rs. 90

Let the price of one book =  $x$

The price of one pencil =  $y$

∴ The equation can be written as  $x + 3y = 90$

(ii) Sum of two numbers = 5

Let the first number =  $x$

The second number =  $y$

∴ The equation can be written as  $x + y = 5$

(iii) Let the weight of Iram =  $x$

The weight of Ali =  $y$

∴ The equation can be written as  $x = \frac{y}{2}$

### 6.4.3 Solution of a Linear Equation in Two Unknowns

The solution of linear equation  $ax + by = c$  in two variables " $x$ " and " $y$ " is an ordered pair of " $x$ " and " $y$ " that satisfies  $ax + by = c$ . Since a linear equation represents a straight line, hence an equation may have so many solutions.

**Example 6 :** Find four solutions for the equation  $3x + y = 2$ .

**Solution:**  $3x + y = 2$

Put the value of  $x = 0$

$$3(0) + y = 2$$

$$\Rightarrow 0 + y = 2$$

$$\Rightarrow y = 2$$

Put the value of  $x = 2$

$$3(2) + y = 2$$

$$\Rightarrow 6 + y = 2$$

$$\Rightarrow y = 2 - 6$$

$$\Rightarrow y = -4$$

Put the value of  $x = 1$

$$3(1) + y = 2$$

$$3 + y = 2$$

$$y = 2 - 3 = -1$$

Put the value of  $x = 3$

$$3(3) + y = 2$$

$$9 + y = 2$$

$$y = 2 - 9$$

$$y = -7$$

Thus, the solutions of the given equation are infinite  $(0, 2), (1, -1), (2, -4), (3, -7), \dots$

• **Solution of two Linear Equations in two Unknowns**

A pair of linear equations in two variables is said to form a system of simultaneous linear equations. A pair of values of  $x$  and  $y$  which satisfy each one of the given equations in  $x$  and  $y$  is called solution of the system of simultaneous linear equations. For example, two linear equations  $x + y = 5$  and  $x - y = 3$  have solution

$x = 4$  and  $y = 1$  i.e.,

$$x + y = 5$$

$$\text{L.H.S} = x + y$$

$$= (4) + (1)$$

$$= 5 = \text{R.H.S}$$

Thus,  $x = 4$  and  $y = 1$  is a solution of the given equations.

$$x - y = 3$$

$$\text{L.H.S} = x - y$$

$$= (4) - (1)$$

$$= 3 = \text{R.H.S}$$

### EXERCISE 6.8

Write equations for the following statements.

- (1) The difference between father's age and daughter's age is 26 years.
- (ii) The price of 6 biscuits is equal to the price of one chocolate.
- (iii) If a number is added to three times of another number, the sum is 25

- (iv) The division of sum of two numbers by their difference is equal 1 (2nd number is less than 1<sup>st</sup>)
- (v) Twice of any age increased by 7 years becomes y years.
2. Find two solutions for the equation  $2x + y = 3$
  3. Find three solutions for the equations  $x + y = 2$
  4. Find four solutions for the equations  $y = 2x$
  5. Is (1,2) a solution set of  $x + y = 3$  and  $2x + 7y = 16$ ?
  6. Which one of (3, 1) and (0, 3) is a solution of  $2x + 5y = 15$  and  $y - x = 3$ ?

## 6.5 SOLUTION OF SIMULTANEOUS LINEAR EQUATIONS

The solution of simultaneous linear equations means finding values for the variables that make them true sentences. Let us learn how to find the solution of simultaneous linear equations.

### 6.5.1 Solve Simultaneous Linear Equations

There are many methods solving simultaneous linear equations but here we shall confine ourselves to the following three methods.

- Method of equating the coefficients.
- Method of elimination by substitution.
- Method of cross Multiplication.
  
- Method of Equating the Coefficients

**Example:** Find the solution with the method of equating the coefficients.

$$9x + 8y = 1$$

$$5x - y = 6$$

**Solution:**

$$9x + 8y = 1 \quad \text{.....(i)}$$

$$5x - y = 6 \quad \text{.....(ii)}$$

Step 1: Convert the given equation into an equivalent equation in such a way that the coefficient of one variable must be same. Multiply both sides of equation (i) by 8, we have

$$\begin{aligned}8(5x - y) &= 8(6) \\40x - 8y &= 48 \quad \text{.....(iii)}\end{aligned}$$

Step 2: Add equations (i) and (iii) to find the value of one variable.

$$\begin{array}{r}9x + 8y = 1 \\40x - 8y = 48 \\ \hline49x \quad = 49 \\ \hline x = \frac{49}{49} = 1\end{array}$$

Step 3: Put the value of "x" in equation (i) or (ii) to find the value of "y"

$$\begin{aligned}5x - y &= 6 \quad \text{.....(ii)} \\5(1) - y &= 6 \\5 - y &= 6 \\y &= 5 - 6 = -1\end{aligned}$$

Thus,  $x = 1$  and  $y = -1$  is the required solution.

Step 4: Check the answer by placing the values of "x" and "y" in any equation.

$$\begin{aligned}9x + 8y &= 1 \\ \text{L.H.S} &= 9x + 8y \\ &= 9(1) + 8(-1) \\ &= 9 - 8 = 1 = \text{R.H.S}\end{aligned}$$

• Method of Elimination by Substitution

**Example:** Find the solution set with the method of elimination by substitution.

$$\begin{aligned}3x + 5y &= 5 \\ x + 2y &= 1\end{aligned}$$

**Solution:**

$$\begin{aligned}3x + 5y &= 5 \quad \text{..... (i)} \\ x + 2y &= 1 \quad \text{..... (ii)}\end{aligned}$$

Step 1: Find the value of "x" or "y" from any of the given equations. From equation (ii)

$$x + 2y = 1 \Rightarrow x = 1 - 2y \text{ (iii)}$$

Step 2: Substitute the value of "x" in equation (i)

$$3x + 5y = 5$$

$$3(1 - 2y) + 5y = 5$$

$$3 - 6y + 5y = 5$$

$$3 - y = 5$$

$$y = 3 - 5 = -2$$

Step 3: Put the value of "y" in equation (iii) to find the value of "x".

$$x = 1 - 2y \quad \text{(from (iii))}$$

$$x = 1 - 2(-2) = 1 + 4$$

$$x = 5$$

Hence,  $x = 5$  and  $y = -2$  is the required solution.

Step 4: Check the answer by putting the values in any equation i.e. in (i) or (ii)

$$3x + 5y = 5 \quad \text{from (i)}$$

$$\text{L.H.S} = 3(5) + 5(-2)$$

$$= 15 - 10$$

$$= 5 = \text{R.H.S}$$

Also check by putting the values in equation (ii)  $x + 2y = 1$

$$\text{L.H.S} = (5) + 2(-2)$$

$$= 5 - 4$$

$$= 1 = \text{R.H.S}$$

- Method of cross Multiplication

Let the two equations be

$$a_1x + b_1y + c_1 = 0 \quad \text{..... (i)}$$

$$a_2x + b_2y + c_2 = 0 \quad \text{..... (ii)}$$

Multiplying (i) by  $b_2$  and (ii) by  $b_1$  we have

$$a_1b_2x + b_1b_2y + b_2c_1 = 0 \quad \text{..... (iii)}$$

$$a_2b_1x + b_1b_2y + b_1c_2 = 0 \quad \text{..... (iv)}$$



Subtracting (iii) from (iv)

$$\begin{array}{r} a_2b_1x + b_1b_2y + b_1c_2 = 0 \\ \pm a_1b_2x \pm b_1b_2y \pm b_2c_1 = 0 \\ \hline a_2b_1x - a_1b_2x + b_1c_2 - b_2c_1 = 0 \end{array}$$

$$\Rightarrow x(a_2b_1 - a_1b_2) = b_2c_1 - b_1c_2 \quad \Rightarrow \quad \frac{x(a_2b_1 - a_1b_2)}{1} = \frac{b_2c_1 - b_1c_2}{1}$$

$$\Rightarrow x = \frac{b_2c_1 - b_1c_2}{a_1b_2 - a_2b_1} \quad \Rightarrow \quad \frac{x}{b_2c_1 - b_1c_2} = \frac{1}{a_1b_2 - a_2b_1}$$

Now, multiplying (i) by  $a_2$  and (ii) by  $a_1$  we have

$$a_1a_2x + a_2b_1y + a_2c_1 = 0 \quad \dots\dots (v)$$

$$a_1a_2x + a_1b_2y + a_1c_2 = 0 \quad \dots\dots (vi)$$

Subtracting (v) from (vi)

$$\begin{array}{r} a_1a_2x + a_1b_2y + a_1c_2 = 0 \\ \pm a_1a_2x \pm a_2b_1y \pm a_2c_1 = 0 \\ \hline a_1b_2y - a_2b_1y + a_1c_2 - a_2c_1 = 0 \end{array}$$

$$\Rightarrow y(a_1b_2 - a_2b_1) = a_2c_1 - a_1c_2$$

$$\Rightarrow y = \frac{a_2c_1 - a_1c_2}{a_1b_2 - a_2b_1}$$

$$\Rightarrow \frac{y}{a_2c_1 - a_1c_2} = \frac{1}{a_1b_2 - a_2b_1}$$

$$\therefore \frac{x}{b_2c_1 - b_1c_2} = \frac{y}{a_2c_1 - a_1c_2} = \frac{1}{a_1b_2 - a_2b_1}$$

The following diagram helps in remembering and writing the above solution.

$$\begin{array}{c} x \qquad y \qquad 1 \\ a_1 \left| \begin{array}{ccc} b_1 & c_1 & \\ & a_1 & \\ & b_1 & c_1 \end{array} \right. \\ a_2 \left| \begin{array}{ccc} b_2 & c_2 & \\ & a_2 & \\ & b_2 & c_2 \end{array} \right. \end{array}$$

The arrows between two numbers indicate that they are to be multiplied and the second product is to be subtracted from the first.

**Example** Find the solution set with the method of cross multiplication.

$$2x + y = 5$$

$$3x - 4 = 2$$

**Solution:** Rewrite the given equation to have zero on the right hand side.

$$2x + y = 5 \quad \text{..... (i)}$$

$$3x - 4y = 2 \quad \text{..... (ii)}$$

$$2x + y - 5 = 0$$

$$3x - 4y - 2 = 0$$

	$x$	$y$	$1$	
2	1	$\begin{array}{c} \nearrow -5 \\ \searrow -2 \end{array}$	$\begin{array}{c} \nearrow 2 \\ \searrow 3 \end{array}$	$\begin{array}{c} \nearrow 1 -5 \\ \searrow -4 -2 \end{array}$
3	-4	$\begin{array}{c} \nearrow -5 \\ \searrow -2 \end{array}$	$\begin{array}{c} \nearrow 2 \\ \searrow 3 \end{array}$	$\begin{array}{c} \nearrow 1 -5 \\ \searrow -4 -2 \end{array}$

Now, we can immediately write down the solution.

$$\frac{x}{(1)(-2) - (-4)(-5)} = \frac{y}{(-5)(3) - (-2)(2)} = \frac{1}{(2)(-4) - (3)(1)}$$

$$\frac{x}{-2 - 20} = \frac{y}{-15 + 4} = \frac{1}{-8 - 3}$$

$$\Rightarrow \frac{x}{-22} = \frac{y}{-11} = \frac{1}{-11}$$

$$\Rightarrow x = \frac{-22}{-11} = 2 \quad \text{and} \quad y = \frac{-11}{-11} = 1$$

Thus,  $x = 2$  and  $y = 1$  is the required solution.

**Step 4:** Check the answer by putting the values of  $x = 2$  and  $y = 1$  in the equation

$$2x + y = 5 \text{ from (i)}$$

$$\text{L.H.S} = 2(2) + (1)$$

$$= 4 + 1 = 5 = \text{R.H.S}$$

## EXERCISE 6.9

1. Find the solution set by using the method of equating the coefficients.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{(i)} \quad 2x + 5y &= -1 \\ x - 2y &= 4 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{(ii)} \quad x + y &= 2 \\ x - y &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{(iii)} \quad 2x + 3y &= 3 \\ x + 5y &= 5 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{(iv)} \quad x - 4y &= 4 \\ 4x - y &= 16 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{(v)} \quad 2x - 3y &= 6 \\ 3x + 5y &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{(vi)} \quad 3x - 4y &= 7 \\ 5x + y &= 27 \end{aligned}$$

2. Find the solution set by using the method of elimination by substitution.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{(i)} \quad 2x + 2y &= 5 \\ x - 2y &= 3 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{(ii)} \quad 5x + 2y &= 15 \\ -2x + y &= 4 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{(iii)} \quad 6x + y &= 2 \\ x - 4y &= 15 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{(iv)} \quad 2x + 7y &= 10 \\ 3x + y &= 3 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{(v)} \quad 2x - 4y &= -10 \\ y + 5x &= -5 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{(vi)} \quad x + 8y &= 15 \\ 3x - y &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

3. Find the solution set by using the method of cross multiplication.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{(i)} \quad 2x - 7y &= 11 \\ 5x - 10y &= 10 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{(ii)} \quad 11x + 12y &= 15 \\ 12x + 11y &= -23 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{(iii)} \quad 2x - 9y + 10 &= 0 \\ 3x - 5y - 10 &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{(iv)} \quad 5x + y - 56 &= 0 \\ x + 18y - 29 &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{(v)} \quad 9x - 11y - 15 &= 0 \\ 7x - 13y - 25 &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{(vi)} \quad 2y - 10x - 86 &= 0 \\ 2x + 5y - 11 &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

### 6.5.2 Solving Real Life Problems Involving Two Simultaneous Linear Equations in two Variables

**Example 1:** A number is half of another number. The sum of 3 times of 1<sup>st</sup> number and 4 times of 2<sup>nd</sup> number is 22. Find the numbers.

**Solution:** Suppose that the numbers are  $x$  and  $y$ . Then according to given condition.

$$x = \frac{y}{2} \quad \text{.....(i)}$$

$$3x + 4y = 22 \quad \text{.....(ii)}$$

From equation (i) we get,

$$x = \frac{y}{2} \Rightarrow y = 2x \quad \text{..... (iii)}$$

Put the value of "y" in equation (ii)

$$3x + 4(2x) = 22 \Rightarrow 3x + 8x = 22 \Rightarrow 11x = 22 \Rightarrow x = \frac{y}{2} = 2$$

Put the value of "x" in equation (iii)

$$y = 2x \Rightarrow y = 2(2) = 4$$

Thus, the numbers are 2 and 4.

**Example 2:** 11 years ago Ali's age was 5 times of Waleed's age. But after 7 years Ali's age will be 2 times of Waleed's age. Find their ages.

**Solution:** Suppose that Ali's age is "x" years and Waleed's age is "y" years. Before 11 years their ages were:

Ali's age = (x - 11) years, Waleed's age = (y - 11) years

Then according to the given condition,

Ali's age = 5 (Waleed's age)

$$\Rightarrow x - 11 = 5(y - 11)$$

$$\Rightarrow x - 11 = 5y - 55$$

$$\Rightarrow x - 5y = -55 + 11$$

$$\Rightarrow x - 5y = -44 \quad \text{..... (i)}$$

After 7 years their ages will be:

Ali's age = (x + 7) years, Waleed's age = (y + 7) years

Then according to the given condition,

Ali's age = 2 (Waleed's age)

$$\Rightarrow x + 7 = 2(y + 7)$$

$$\begin{aligned} \Rightarrow x + 7 &= 2y + 14 \\ \Rightarrow x - 2y &= 14 - 7 \\ \Rightarrow x - 2y &= 7 \quad \dots\dots\dots (ii) \end{aligned}$$

By solving equation (i) and (ii).

$$\begin{array}{r} x - 5y = -44 \\ \pm x \mp 2y = \pm 7 \\ \hline -3y = -51 \text{ (By subtracting)} \end{array}$$

$$\Rightarrow y = 17$$

Put the value of  $y$  in equation (ii)

$$\begin{aligned} x - 2y &= 7 \\ \Rightarrow x - 2(17) &= 7 \\ \Rightarrow x - 34 &= 7 \\ \Rightarrow x &= 34 + 7 = 41 \end{aligned}$$

Thus, Ali's age = 41 years and Waleed's age = 17 years.

**Example 3:** If numerator and denominator of a fraction increased by 5, the fraction becomes

$\frac{1}{2}$  and if numerator and denominator are decreased by 3, the fraction becomes  $\frac{2}{5}$ . Find the

fraction.

**Solution:** Suppose the numerator is  $x$  and denominator is  $y$ , therefore the fraction is  $\frac{x}{y}$ . Then, according to the given condition.

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{x+5}{y+5} = \frac{1}{2} &\Rightarrow 2(x+5) = y+5 \Rightarrow 2x+10 = y+5 \Rightarrow 2x-y = -5 \\ \Rightarrow y &= 2x+5 \quad \dots\dots\dots(i) \end{aligned}$$

Then, by the second condition.

$$\frac{x-3}{y-3} = \frac{2}{5}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \Rightarrow 5(x - 3) &= 2(y - 3) \\ \Rightarrow 5x - 15 &= 2y - 6 \\ \Rightarrow 5x - 2y &= 15 - 6 \\ 5x - 2y &= 9 \quad \text{..... (ii)} \end{aligned}$$

Put the value of "y" from equation (i), in equation (ii) we have,

$$\begin{aligned} 5x - 2(2x + 5) &= 9 \\ \Rightarrow 5x - 4x - 10 &= 9 \\ \Rightarrow x - 10 &= 9 \\ \Rightarrow x &= 10 + 9 = 19 \end{aligned}$$

Put the value of "x" in equation (i),

$$\begin{aligned} y &= 2x + 5 \quad \text{..... (iii)} \\ \Rightarrow y &= 2(19) + 5 \\ \Rightarrow y &= 38 + 5 \\ \Rightarrow y &= 43 \end{aligned}$$

Thus, the required fraction is  $\frac{19}{43}$

### EXERCISE 6.10

- Ahmad added 5 in the twice of a number. Then he subtracted half of the number from the result. Finally, he got the answer 8. Find the number.
- If we add 3 in the half of a number, we get the same result as we subtract 1 from the quarter of the number. Find the number.
- The sum of two numbers is 5 and their difference is 1. Find the numbers.
- The difference of two numbers is 4. The sum of twice of one number and 3 times of the other number is 43. Find the numbers.
- Adnan is 7 years older than Adeel. Find their ages when  $\frac{1}{4}$  of Adnan's age is equal to the  $\frac{1}{2}$  of Adeel's age.
- 5 years ago Ahsan's age was 7 times of Shakeel's age but after 3 years Ahsan's age will be 4 times of Shakeel's age. Calculate their ages.
- The denominator of a fraction is 5 more than the numerator. But if we subtract 2 from

if we subtract 2 from the numerator and the denominator of the fraction, we get  $\frac{1}{6}$ .

Find the fraction.

8. Fida bought 3kg melons and 4kg mangoes for Rs.470. Anam bought 5kg melons and 6kg mangoes for Rs.730. Calculate the price of melons and mangoes per kg.
9. The cost of 2 footballs and 10 basketballs is Rs.2300 and the cost of 7 footballs and 5 basketballs is Rs.2650. Calculate the price of each football and basketball.
10. If the numerator and denominator of a fraction increased by 1, the fraction becomes  $\frac{2}{3}$  and if the numerator and denominator of same fraction are decreased by 2, it becomes  $\frac{1}{3}$ . Find the fraction.
11. If the numerator and denominator of a fraction are decreased by 1, the fraction becomes  $\frac{1}{2}$ . If the numerator and denominator of the same fraction are decreased by 3, it becomes  $\frac{1}{4}$ . Find the fraction.

## 6.6 ELIMINATION

Look at the following simultaneous linear equations.

$$x + 5 = 8 \quad \text{.....(i)}$$

$$x - 1 = 1 \quad \text{.....(ii)}$$

From above it can be seen that the equation (i) is true for  $x = 3$  and the equation (ii) is true for  $x = 2$ , but both equations are not true for a unique value of  $x$ .

Now observe the following simultaneous linear equations.

$$x + a = 5 \quad \text{.....(iii)}$$

$$x + b = 4 \quad \text{.....(iv)}$$

Here the equation (iii) is true for  $x = 5 - a$  and the equation (iv) is true for  $x = 4 - b$ . While finding a single value of  $x$  for which both the equations are true, we put

$$5 - a = 4 - b$$

$$\Rightarrow a - b = 5 - 4$$



$$\Rightarrow \quad a - b = 1 \quad \text{.....(v)}$$

It can be noted that a new relation (v) is established here which is independent of  $x$ . This process is called elimination and the relation  $a - b = 1$  is called eliminant.

### 6.6.1 ELIMINATION OF A VARIABLE FROM TWO EQUATIONS

At least two equations are required for elimination of one variable. There are different methods of elimination, but we learn here only two methods through examples.

#### (a) Elimination of Variable from two Equations by Substitution

**Example 1:** Eliminate " $x$ " from the following equations by substitution method.

$$ax - b = 0$$

$$cx - d = 0$$

**Solution:** Given:

$$ax - b = 0 \quad \text{..... (i)}$$

$$cx - d = 0 \quad \text{..... (ii)}$$

From equation (i), we have

$$ax = b \quad \text{or } x = \frac{b}{a}$$

Put the value of  $x$  in equation (ii), we get

$$c \left( \frac{b}{a} \right) - d = 0$$

$$\Rightarrow \quad bc - ad = 0 \Rightarrow \quad bc = ad \quad \text{Here " $x$ " is eliminated.}$$

**Example 2:** Eliminate " $x$ " from  $ax^2 + bx + c = 0$  and  $lx + m = 0$  by substitution method.

**Solution:**

$$ax^2 + bx + c = 0 \quad \text{..... (i)}$$

$$lx + m = 0 \quad \text{..... (ii)}$$

From equation (ii), we have,

$$lx + m = 0 \Rightarrow x = \left( \frac{-m}{l} \right)$$

Put the value of x in equation (i)

$$a \left( \frac{-m}{l} \right)^2 + b \left( \frac{-m}{l} \right) + c = 0$$

$$\Rightarrow a \frac{m^2}{l^2} - b \frac{m}{l} + c = 0$$

$$\Rightarrow \frac{am^2}{l^2} - \frac{bm}{l} + c = 0 \quad (\text{Multiply equation by } l^2)$$

$$\Rightarrow am^2 - bml + cl^2 = 0$$

This is the required result.

### EXERCISE 6.11

1. Eliminate "x" from the following equations by substitution method.

(i)  $ax - b = 0$

(ii)  $2x + 3y = 5$

$cx - d = 0$

$x - y = 2$

(iii)  $x + a = b$

(iv)  $a - b = 2x$

$x^2 + a^2 = b^2$

$a^2 + b^2 = 3x^2$

(v)  $x - m = l$

$(l - m)x + a = 0$

2. Eliminate  $v_i$  from the following equations.

(i)  $v_f = v_i + at$

(ii)  $v_f = v_i + at$

(iii)  $v_f = v_i + gt$

$S = v_i t + \frac{1}{2} at^2$

$2aS = v_f^2 + v_i^2$

$S = v_i t + \frac{1}{2} gt^2$

(b) Elimination of a Variable from two Equations by Application of Formulas

**Example 1:** Elimination of "x" from the following equations by using the formula.

$$x + \frac{1}{x} = l; \quad x^2 + \frac{1}{x^2} = m^2$$

**Solution:**

$$x + \frac{1}{x} = l \quad \text{.....(i)}$$

and  $x^2 + \frac{1}{x^2} = m^2 \quad \text{.....(ii)}$

Taking square of both the sides of (i), we have

$$\left(x + \frac{1}{x}\right)^2 = (l)^2$$

or  $x^2 + \frac{1}{x^2} + 2 = l^2$

or  $x^2 + \frac{1}{x^2} = l^2 - 2 \quad \text{.....(iii)}$

Compare equations (ii) and (iii), we get

$$l^2 - 2 = m^2$$

This is the required relation.

**Example 2:** Eliminate of "t" from the following equations.

$$x = \frac{2at}{1+t^2}, \quad y = \frac{b(1-t^2)}{1+t^2}$$

**Solution:**

$$x = \frac{2at}{1+t^2} \quad \text{..... (i)} \quad , \quad y = \frac{b(1-t^2)}{1+t^2} \quad \text{..... (ii)}$$

Equation (i) gives

$$\left(\frac{x}{a}\right)^2 = \left(\frac{2t}{1+t^2}\right)^2$$

or  $\left(\frac{x}{a}\right)^2 = \left(\frac{2t}{1+t^2}\right)^2$  (Taking square of both the sides)

or  $\frac{x^2}{a^2} = \frac{4t^2}{1+2t^2+t^4}$  ..... (iii)

Equation (ii) gives

$$\frac{y}{b} = \frac{1-t^2}{1+t^2}$$

or  $\left(\frac{y}{b}\right)^2 = \left(\frac{1-t^2}{1+t^2}\right)^2$  (Taking square of both the sides)

or  $\frac{y^2}{b^2} = \frac{1-2t^2+t^4}{1+2t^2+t^4}$  ..... (iv)

By adding equations (iii) and (iv),

we have,  $\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = \frac{4t^2}{1+2t^2+t^4} + \frac{1-2t^2+t^4}{1+2t^2+t^4}$

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = \frac{4t^2+1-2t^2+t^4}{1+2t^2+t^4} = \frac{1+2t^2+t^4}{1+2t^2+t^4} = 1$$

Thus,  $\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1$ , is the required solution.

## EXERCISE 6.12

1. Eliminate "x" from the following equations by using appropriate formula.

$$(i) \quad x - \frac{1}{x} = m ; x^2 + \frac{1}{x^2} = n^2$$

$$(ii) \quad x - \frac{1}{x} = \frac{a}{2} ; x^2 + \frac{1}{x^2} = b^2$$

$$(iii) \quad \frac{x^2}{l^2} + \frac{l^2}{x^2} = b^2 ; \frac{l}{x} - \frac{x}{l} = a$$

$$(iv) \quad \frac{x}{c} + \frac{c}{x} = 2a ; \frac{x}{c} - \frac{c}{x} = 3b$$

$$(v) \quad x - \frac{1}{x} = l ; x^3 + \frac{1}{x^3} = m^3$$

$$(vi) \quad x - \frac{1}{x} = p ; x^2 + \frac{1}{x^2} = 2q^2$$

$$(vii) \quad x^2 + \frac{1}{x^2} = 3m^2 ; x^4 + \frac{1}{x^4} = n^4$$

$$(viii) \quad x - \frac{1}{x} = a ; x^4 + \frac{1}{x^4} = a^4$$

## REVIEW EXERCISE 6

1. Four options are given against each statement. Encircle the correct one.

2. Answer the following questions.

- i. What are the simultaneous linear equations?
- ii. Write any three methods for solving simultaneous linear equations.
- iii. How many equations are required for elimination of one variable?

3. Find the value of  $x^4 + \frac{1}{x^4}$ , when  $x + \frac{1}{x} = 7$ .
4. Factorize the following:  
 i.  $3xy + 6x^2y^2 + 9xz$       ii.  $y^4 - 12y^2 + 36$       iii.  $x^8 - y^8$
5. Find the cube of the following:  
 i. 13      ii.  $2x - 3y$       iii.  $7a - b$
6. If  $x + \frac{1}{x} = 5$ , then find the value of  $x^3 + \frac{1}{x^3}$ .
7. Eliminate "x" by substitution method from the following equations.  
 i.  $ax - b = 0$     $cx^2 + mx = 0$       ii.  $lx - n = 0$ ,  $sx^2 + tx + u = 0$
8. Eliminate "x" from the following equations by using formula.  
 i.  $x + \frac{1}{x} = \frac{a}{3}$ ,  $x^2 + \frac{1}{x^2} = b^2$       ii.  $x + \frac{1}{x} = 3b$ ,  $x^3 + \frac{1}{x^3} = a^3$   
 iii.  $x - \frac{1}{x} = a$ ,  $x^4 + \frac{1}{x^4} = b^4$
9. If the numerator and denominator of a fraction is increased by 1, the fraction becomes  $\frac{2}{3}$ . Find the fraction.  
 and if the numerator and denominator of same fraction are decreased by 1, it becomes
10. Eliminate "x" from the following equations.  
 (i)  $x = \frac{1+t^2}{1-t^2}$ ,  $y = \frac{2at}{1-t^2}$       (ii)  $x = \frac{1+t^2}{2at}$ ,  $y = \frac{b(1-t^2)}{1+t^2}$



## SUMMARY

- Three basic algebraic formulas are:
  - i.  $(a + b)^2 = a^2 + 2ab + b^2$
  - ii.  $(a - b)^2 = a^2 - 2ab + b^2$
  - iii.  $a^2 - b^2 = (a + b)(a - b)$
- Expressing polynomials as product of two or more polynomials that cannot be further expressed as product of factors is called Factorization.
- The cubic formulas are:
  - i.  $(a + b)^3 = a^3 + 3a^2b + 3ab^2 + b^3$
  - ii.  $(a - b)^3 = a^3 - 3a^2b + 3ab^2 - b^3$
- If  $a$  and  $b$  are real numbers (and if  $a$  and  $b$  are not both equal to 0) then  $ax + by = r$  is called a linear equation in two variables  $x$  and  $y$ ,  $a$  and  $b$  are coefficients and  $r$  is constant of the equation.
- Simultaneous linear equations mean a collection of linear equations all of which are satisfied by the same values of the variables.
- The general form of the simultaneous linear system of equations in two variables is:

$$a_1x + b_1y + c_1 = 0$$

$$a_2x + b_2y + c_2 = 0$$

CHAPTER

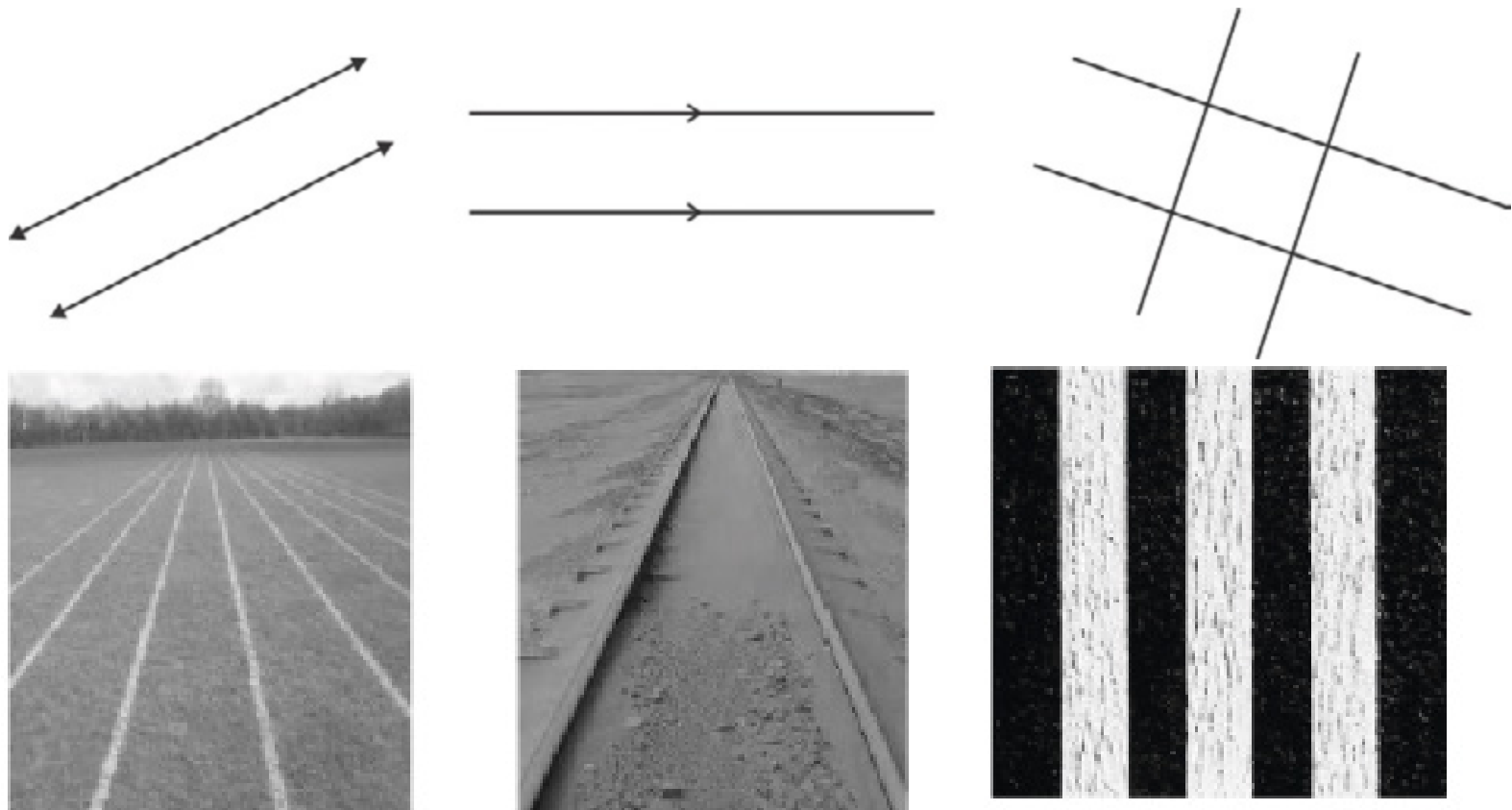


# Fundamentals of Geometry

## 7.1 Parallel Lines

### 7.1.1 Definition:

If two lines lying on the same plane never meet, touch or intersect at any point, then these are called parallel lines. Parallel lines are always the same distance apart. Some examples of parallel lines are shown below:



### 7.1.2 Demonstration of Properties of Parallel Lines

- Two lines which are parallel to the same given line are parallel to each other

Let two lines  $l$  and  $n$  are parallel to the third line  $m$  as shown in figure 1. There is no intersection point of  $l$  with  $m$  and  $n$  with  $m$ . All the points of line  $l$  are equidistant from the line  $m$ . Similarly, the points of line  $n$  are also equidistant from the line  $m$ . Therefore, we cannot find a point common between  $l$  and  $n$  which implies that  $l$  is parallel to  $n$ .

In figure 2, the pairs of parallel line segments are  $\overline{AB} \parallel \overline{CD}$ ,  $\overline{AB} \parallel \overline{EF}$ ,  $\overline{EF} \parallel \overline{GH}$  etc. Similarly,  $\overline{CD} \parallel \overline{EF}$  or  $\overline{AB} \parallel \overline{GH}$ .

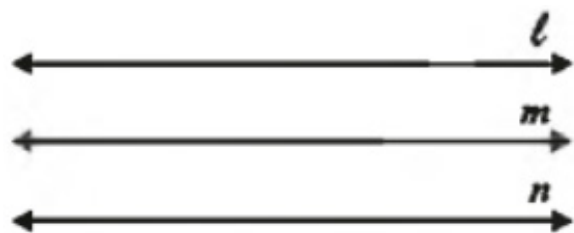


Figure 1

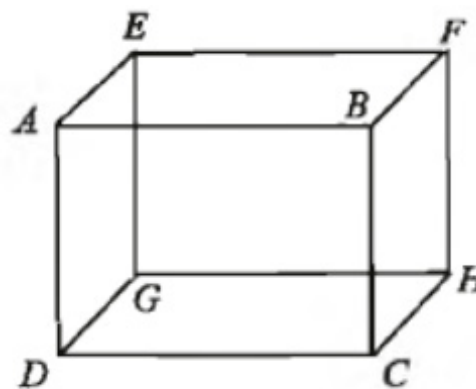


Figure 2

- If three parallel lines are intersected by two transversals in such a way that the two intercepts on one transversal are equal to each other, the two intercepts on the second transversal are also equal.

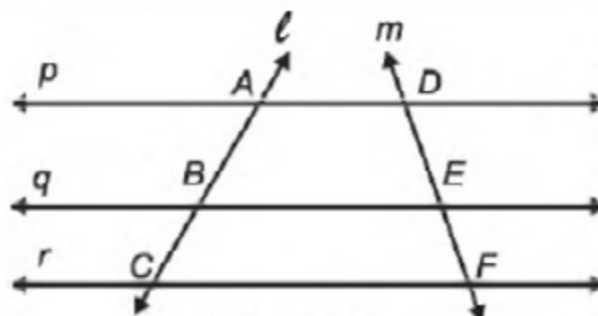


Figure 3

In the above figure the two transversals  $l$  and  $m$  intersect three parallel lines  $p$ ,  $q$  and  $r$  at the points  $A$ ,  $B$ ,  $C$ ,  $D$ ,  $E$  and  $F$ . The intercepts formed by transversal  $l$  are  $\overline{AB}$  and  $\overline{BC}$  and intercepts by transversal  $m$  are  $\overline{DE}$  and  $\overline{EF}$ .

According to the above property of parallel lines if  $m\overline{AB} = m\overline{BC}$  then  $m\overline{DE} = m\overline{EF}$ .

- A line through the midpoint of the side of a triangle parallel to another side bisects the third side (an application of above property)

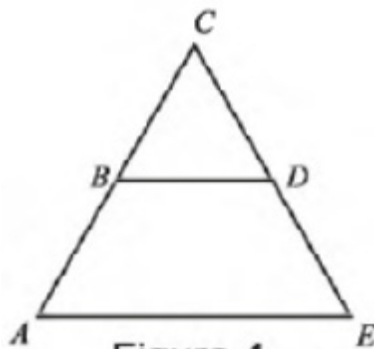


Figure 4

In figure 4, point B is the midpoint of  $\overline{AC}$  and  $\overline{BD} \parallel \overline{AE}$ , therefore, from the above property D is also the midpoint of  $\overline{CE}$ , i.e.,

$$\begin{aligned} m\overline{AB} &= m\overline{BC} \text{ and } \overline{BD} \parallel \overline{AE} \\ \Rightarrow m\overline{CD} &= m\overline{DE} \end{aligned}$$

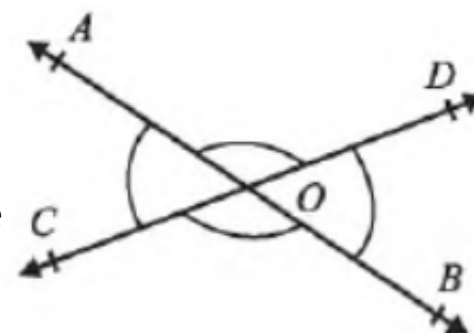
### 7.1.3 Special angles formed when a Transversal intersects Two Parallel Lines.

When a transversal intersects two parallel lines angles formed are:

- i. Vertically opposite angles
- ii. Corresponding angles
- iii. Alternate interior angles
- iv. Interior angles

Vertically opposite angles are formed when two straight lines intersect. The two angles are directly opposite each other through the vertex.

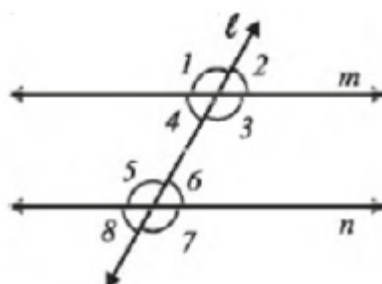
$\angle AOC$  and  $\angle DOB$  are vertically opposite angles.  $\angle AOD$  and  $\angle COB$  are vertically opposite angles.



Corresponding Angle.

In the following figure the transversal "l" intersects the two parallel lines "m" and "n". Consider these pairs of angles

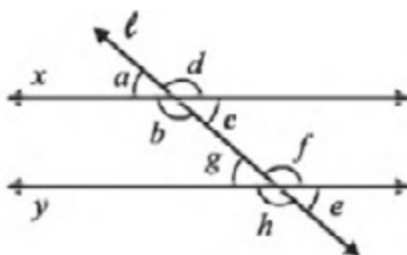
- $\angle 1$  and  $\angle 5$
- $\angle 2$  and  $\angle 6$
- $\angle 3$  and  $\angle 7$
- $\angle 4$  and  $\angle 8$



These pairs of angles are corresponding angles because both the angles are at the same position; both are on the same side of the transversal and at the same side of the two parallel lines.

## Alternate Interior Angle

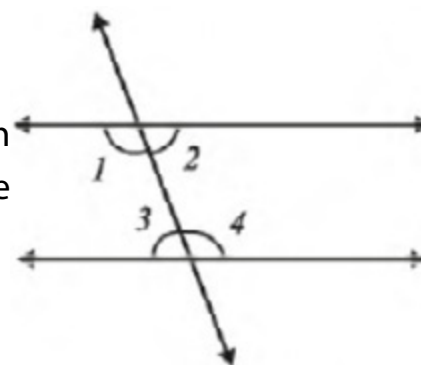
Consider the following figure in which transversal "l" intersects two parallel lines "x" and "y".



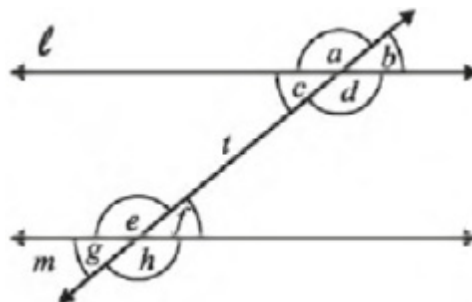
The pair of angles  $\angle b, \angle f$  and  $\angle c, \angle g$  both the angles are on opposite sides of the transversal and between the two parallel lines. These angles are called alternate interior angles.

## Interior Angle

Consider the pair of angles marked  $\angle 1, \angle 3$  and  $\angle 2, \angle 4$ . In which both the angles in a pair are on the same side of the transversal and between the two parallel lines. These angles are called interior angles.



## Example 1:



If two lines l and m are parallel and intersected by a transversal t then identify the special angles thus formed.

## Solution:

- Vertically opposite angles are: a, d and b, c and e, h and f, g.
- Corresponding angles on the same side of the transversal are a, e and c, g.
- Alternate interior angles are: c, f and d, e.
- Interior angles are: c, e and d, f



### 7.1.4 Relationship Between the Pairs of Angles when a Transversal Intersects Two Parallel Lines

When a transversal intersects parallel lines then:

- Corresponding angles are equal in size
- Alternate angles are equal in size
- Interior angles are supplementary, or add up to  $180^\circ$

Consider the following figure in which  $AB \parallel CD$  and  $EF$  is the transversal.

- The pairs of corresponding angles are  $\angle 1, \angle 5$ ;  $\angle 3, \angle 7$ ;  $\angle 2, \angle 6$  and  $\angle 4, \angle 8$

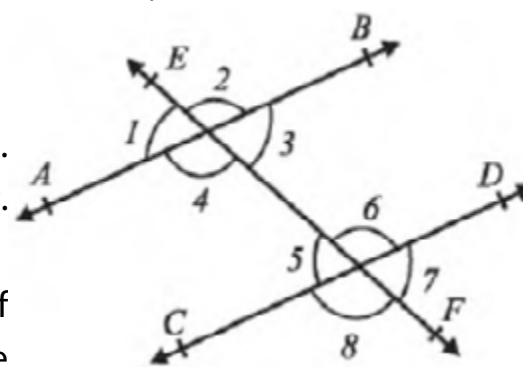
All these pairs of angles are equal in measure i.e.,

$$m\angle 1 = m\angle 5, m\angle 2 = m\angle 6, m\angle 3 = m\angle 7, \text{ and } m\angle 4 = m\angle 8$$

- The pairs of alternate interior angles are  $\angle 3, \angle 5$  and  $\angle 4, \angle 6$ . Both alternate pairs of angles are equal in measurement.  
 $m\angle 3 = m\angle 5$  and  $m\angle 4 = m\angle 6$

- The pairs of alternate interior angles on the same side of the transversal are  $\angle 3, \angle 6$  and  $\angle 4, \angle 5$ . These angles are supplementary angles i.e.

$$m\angle 3 + m\angle 6 = 180^\circ \text{ and } m\angle 4 + m\angle 5 = 180^\circ$$



#### Example 2:

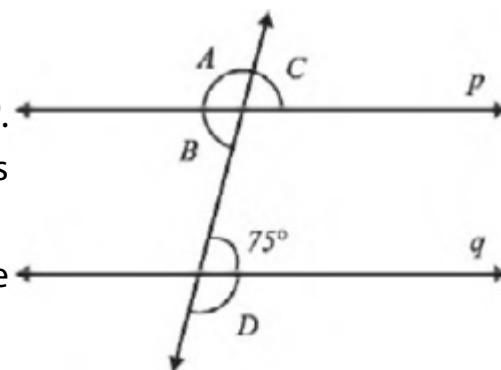
Determine the values of angles A, B, C and D in the figure to the right where the lines p and q are parallel to each other.

#### Solution:

Since  $\angle B$  is the alternate interior angle to the given angle of  $75^\circ$ .

So  $m\angle B = 75^\circ$ .  $\angle C$  and the given angle of  $75^\circ$  are corresponding angles so,  $m\angle C = 75^\circ$

$\angle A$  and  $\angle B$  are angles of the straight line on the same side of the transversal,



Thus  $m\angle A + m\angle B = m\angle A + 75^\circ = 180^\circ$

$$m\angle A = 180^\circ - 75^\circ = 105^\circ$$

Similarly,  $\angle D$  is an adjacent supplementary angle to the given angle  $75^\circ$

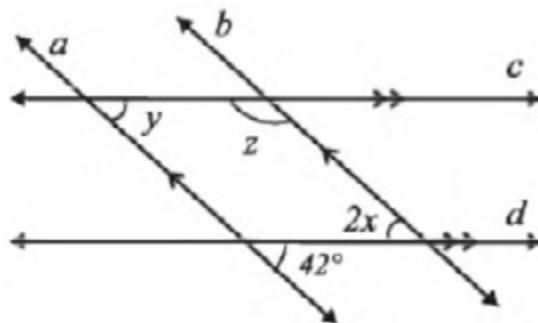
So,  $m\angle D + 75^\circ = 180^\circ$

$$m\angle D = 180^\circ - 75^\circ = 105^\circ$$

Thus  $m\angle A = 105^\circ, m\angle B = 75^\circ, m\angle C = 75^\circ$  and  $m\angle D = 105^\circ$

**Example 3:** Find the value of  $x$ ,  $y$  and  $z$ , where lines  $a$  and  $b$  are parallel and lines  $c$  and  $d$  are parallel to each other.

**Solution:**



Since  $a \parallel b, 2x = 42^\circ$

(alternate interior angles)

$$m\angle x = 21^\circ$$

Again  $c \parallel d, m\angle y = 42^\circ$

(corresponding angles)

$$m\angle y + m\angle z = 180^\circ$$

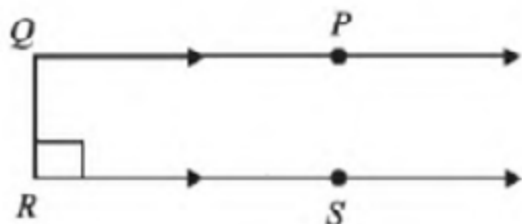
(interior angles)

$$42^\circ + z = 180^\circ$$

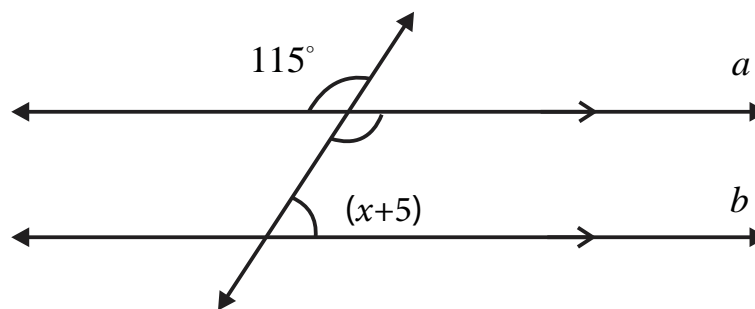
$$m\angle z = 180^\circ - 42^\circ = 138^\circ$$

### Exercise 7.1

1. Find the measure of  $\angle PQR$

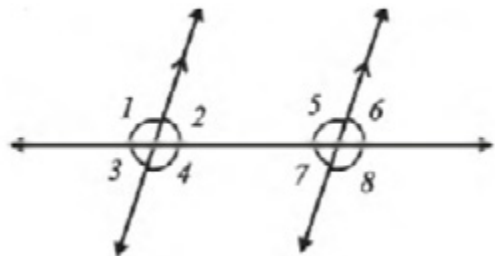


2. Find the value of " $x$ "

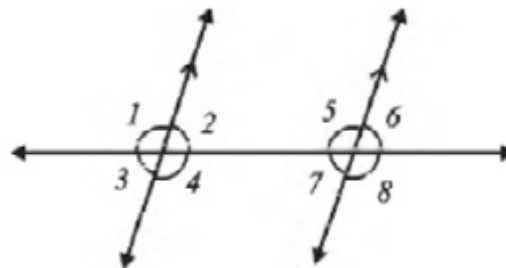


3. If  $m\angle 3 = 68^\circ$  and

$m\angle 8 = (2x + 4)^\circ$ , what is the value of  $x$ ? Show your steps.

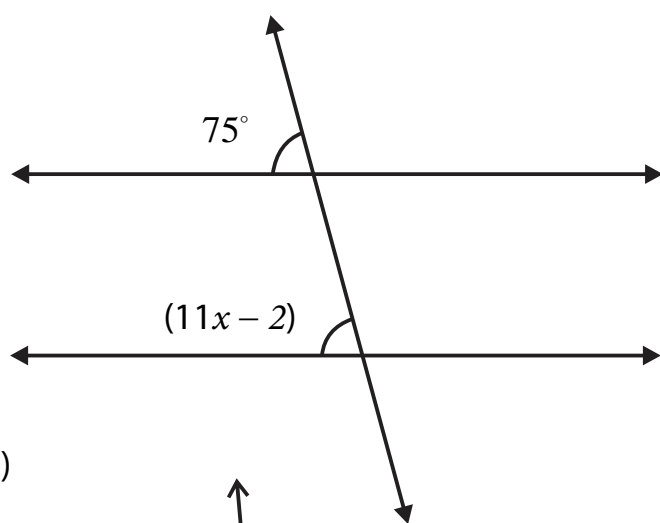


4. If  $m\angle 1 = 105^\circ$ , find  $m\angle 4$ ,  $m\angle 5$ , and  $m\angle 8$ . Indicate which property is used

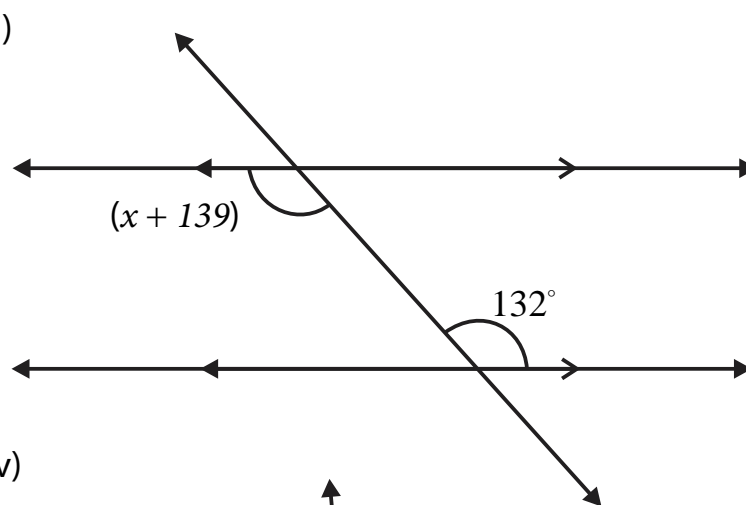


5. Solve for  $x$ ! Also find the angle

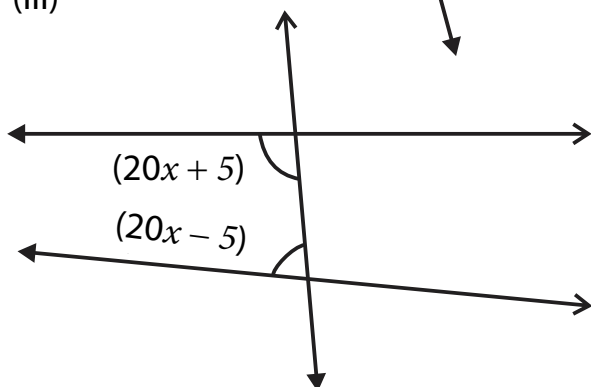
(i)



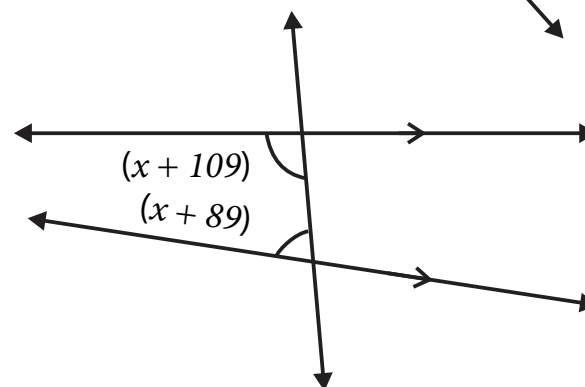
(ii)



(iii)



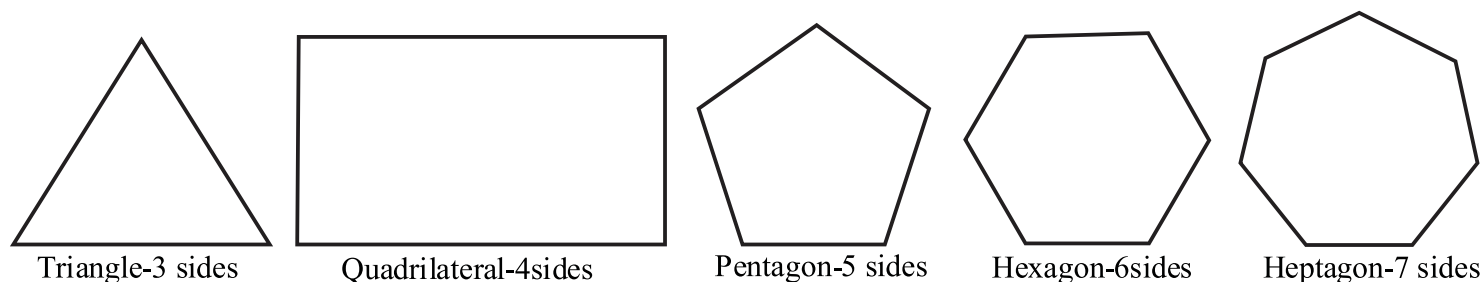
(iv)



## 7.2 Polygons

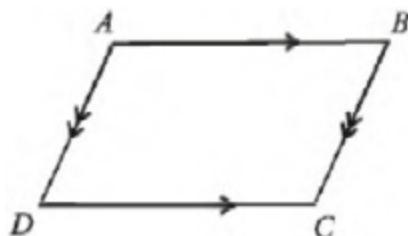
### 7.2.1 Define a Polygon

A polygon is a closed plane figure with three or more straight sides. Polygons are named according to the number of sides. The names of the most common polygons are given below:



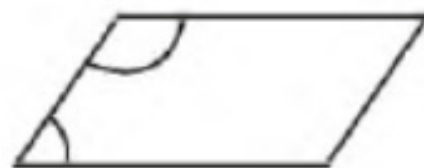
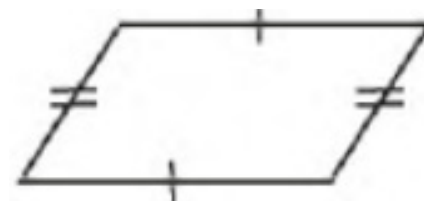
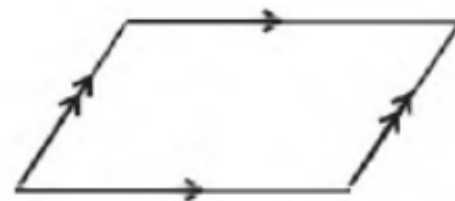
### 7.2.2 Demonstrate the properties of a parallelogram

A parallelogram is a special type of quadrilateral whose pairs of opposite sides are parallel. For example quadrilateral ABCD is a parallelogram because  $\overline{AB} \parallel \overline{DC}$  and  $\overline{AD} \parallel \overline{BC}$ .

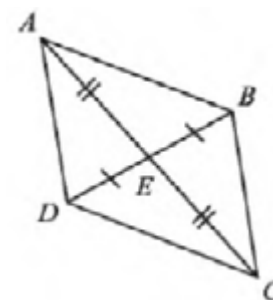


A parallelogram has the following properties:

- i. A parallelogram is a quadrilateral with both pairs of opposite sides parallel.
- ii. In a parallelogram, the 2 pairs of opposite sides are congruent.
- iii. In a parallelogram, the 2 pairs of opposite angles are congruent.
- iv. In a parallelogram, the consecutive angles are supplementary.



- v. In a parallelogram, the diagonals bisect each other.



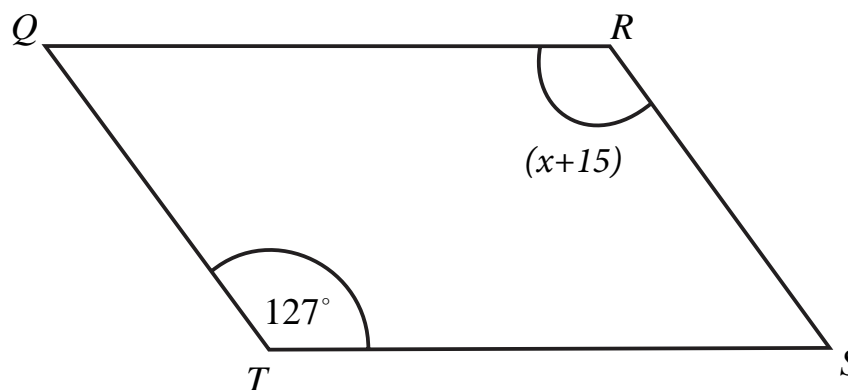
### 7.2.3 Define regular pentagon, hexagon and octagon

A polygon in which all the sides are of equal length is called a regular polygon. All angles of regular polygon also are of same measurement.

- **Regular Pentagon:** A five sided polygon in which all the five sides and angles are of same size is called a regular pentagon. The sum of measures of all the angles of a regular pentagon is  $540^\circ$ . The size of each angle of a regular pentagon is  $\frac{540^\circ}{5} = 108^\circ$
- **Regular Hexagon:** A six sided polygon in which all the six sides and angles are of same size is called a regular hexagon. The sum of measures of all the angles of a regular hexagon is  $720^\circ$ . The size of each angle of a regular hexagon is  $\frac{720^\circ}{6} = 120^\circ$
- **Regular Octagon:** An eight sided polygon in which all the eightsides and angles are of same size is called a regular octagon. The sum of measures of all the angles of a regular octagon is  $1080^\circ$ . The size of each angle of a regular octagon is  $\frac{1080^\circ}{8} = 135^\circ$

**Example 4:** Given that QRST is a parallelogram, find the value of x in the diagram below.

**Solution:** Since opposite angles of parallelograms are congruent, we have  $m\angle (x + 15)^\circ = 127^\circ$   
(Opposite angel in a parallelogram.)  $m\angle x = 127 - 15 = 112^\circ$



**Example 5:** Given that DEFG is a parallelogram, determine the values of  $x$  and  $y$ .

**Solution:** From the figure we get  $m\angle G = 70^\circ + 45^\circ = 115^\circ$

Since  $\overline{ED} \parallel \overline{FG}$ , we have  $m\angle G + m\angle D = 180^\circ$

$$\Rightarrow 115^\circ + m\angle D = 180^\circ$$

$$\Rightarrow m\angle D = 180^\circ - 115^\circ = 65^\circ$$

$$\Rightarrow m\angle D = 5y = 65$$

$$\Rightarrow y = 13$$

Also  $m\angle F = m\angle D$

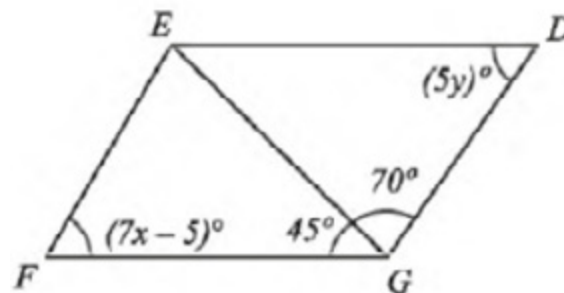
$$\Rightarrow m\angle(7x - 5) = 65^\circ$$

$$\Rightarrow 7x - 5 = 65$$

$$\Rightarrow 7x = 70$$

$$\Rightarrow x = 10$$

So, we have  $x = 10$  and  $y = 13$ .



**Example 6:** Given that ABCD is a parallelogram, find the value of  $x$ .

**Solution:** We know that in parallelogram the diagonals bisect each other.

Thus, we get

$$m\overline{DE} = m\overline{BE}$$

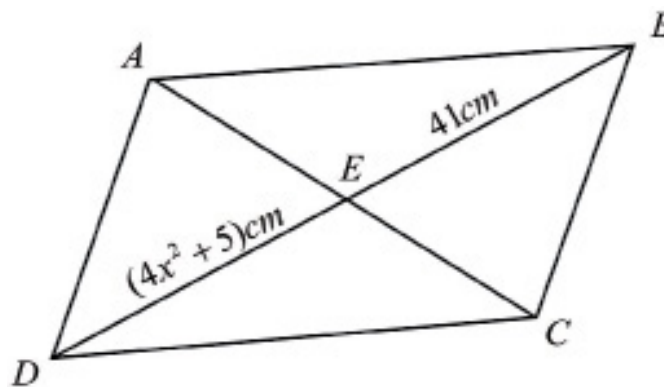
$$\Rightarrow 4x^2 + 5\text{cm} = 4\text{cm}$$

$$\Rightarrow 4x^2 = 41 - 5$$

$$\Rightarrow 4x^2 = 36$$

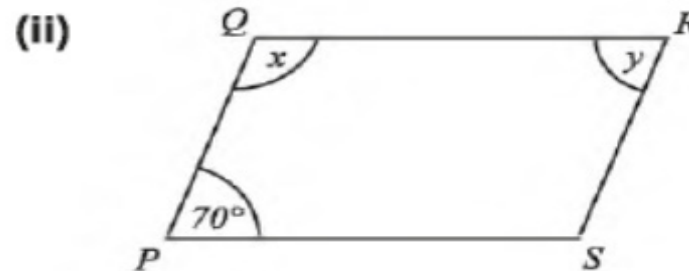
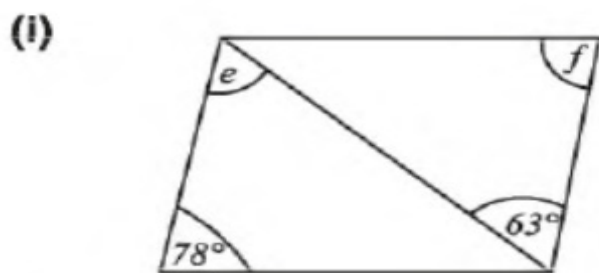
$$\Rightarrow x^2 = 9$$

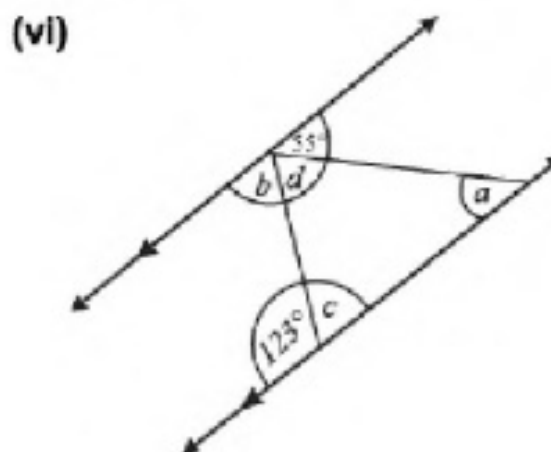
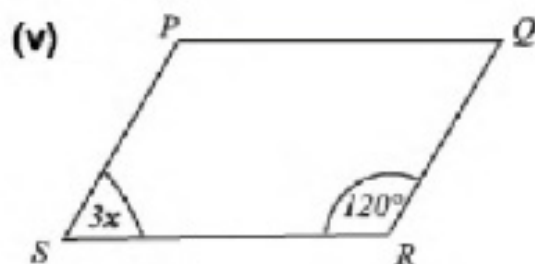
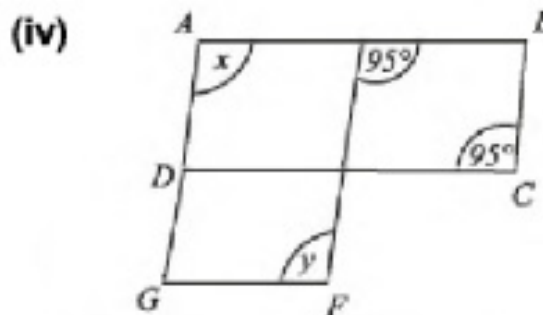
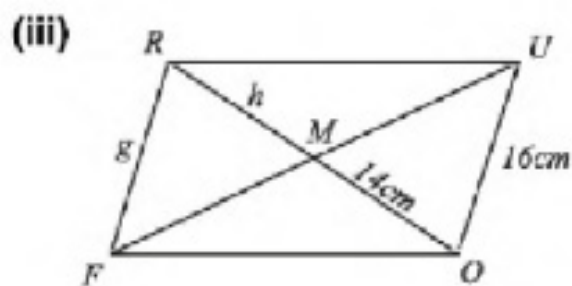
$$\Rightarrow x = 3$$



### Exercise 7.2

1. Find the value of the unknown from the following figures.





## 7.3 CIRCLE

A circle is a simple plane shape of geometry also called a simple closed curve, such that all its points are at the same distance from a given point.

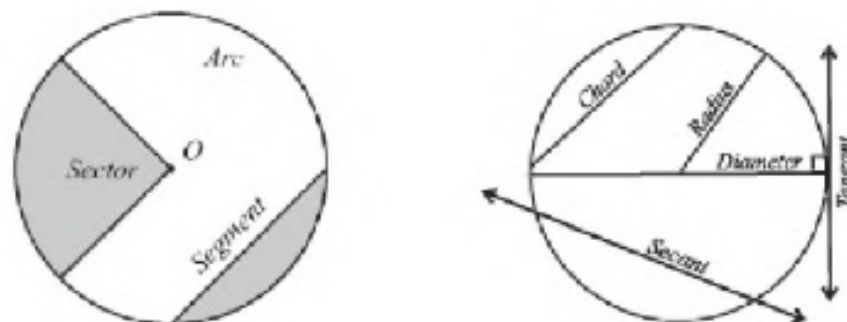
### 7.3.1 Demonstrate a Point Lying in the Interior and Exterior of a Circle

A circle divides the plane into two regions: an interior and an exterior. In everyday use, the term "circle" may be used interchangeably to refer to either the boundary of the figure, or to the whole figure including its interior; in strict technical usage, the circle is the former and the latter is called a disk. For example "A" is outside the circle, "B" is inside the circle and "C" is on the circle.





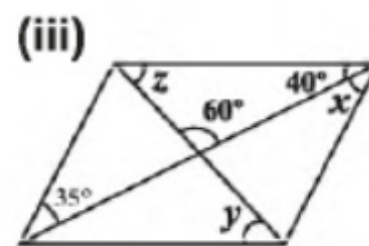
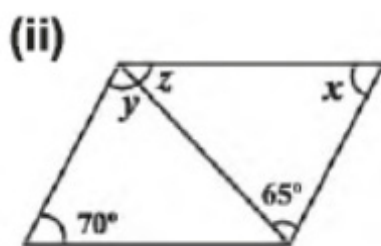
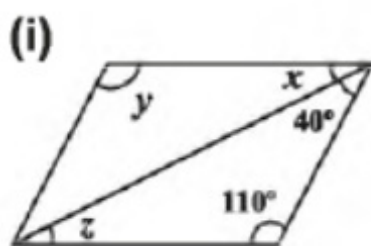
## 7.3.2 Describe the terms in Circle



- Arc: Any part of boundary of the circle.
- Chord: It is a line segment whose endpoints lie on the circle.
- Secant: It is a straight line cutting the circle at two points. It is an extended chord.
- Sector: A region bounded by two radii and an arc lying between the radii.
- Segment: A region bounded by a chord and an arc lying between the chord's endpoints.
- Tangent: A straight line that touches the circle at a single point.
- Concyclic: A set of points are said to be concyclic (or cocyclic) if they lie on a common circle.

## Exercise 7.3

1. For each of the following figures calculate the unknown angles marked  $x$ ,  $y$  and  $z$

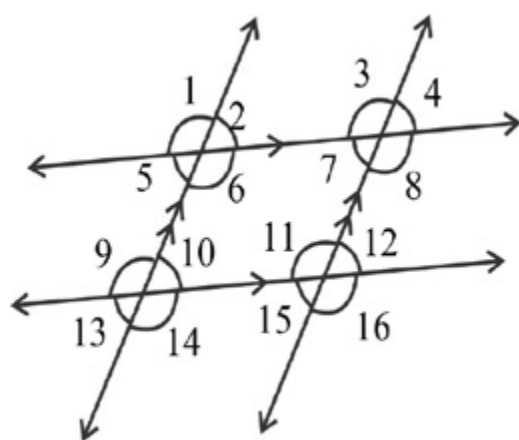


- In a parallelogram, one angle is  $28^\circ$  greater than the other. Find the angles of the parallelogram.
- If one angle of a parallelogram is four times greater than the other. Find the angles of the parallelogram.
- The measure of one angle of a parallelogram is  $85^\circ$ . What are the measures of the other angles?
- In parallelogram WXYZ, the measure of angle  $x = (4a - 40)^\circ$  and the measure of angle  $Z = (2a - 8)^\circ$ . Find the measure of angle W.

## Review Exercise 7

1. Four options are given against each statement. Encircle the correct one.

2. Consider the following figure.



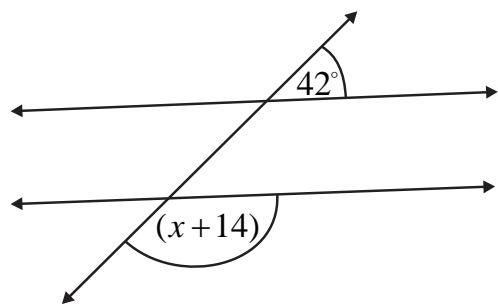
a. Write the pair of

- (i) corresponding angles
- (ii) alternate interior angles
- (iii) vertically opposite angles
- (iv) alternate exterior angles

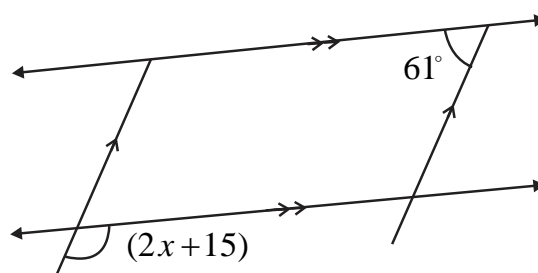
b. If  $m\angle 1 = 125^\circ$  then find the measure of all the remaining angles.

3. Find the value of "x"

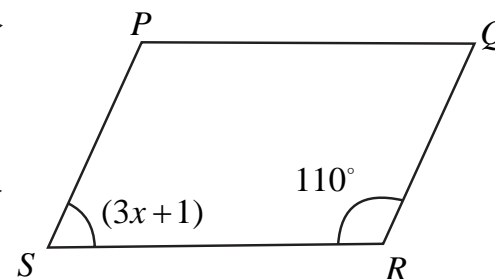
(i)



(ii)



(iii)



## SUMMARY

- Two lines on a plane that do not intersect at any point are called parallel lines. Parallel lines are always the same distance apart.
- Two lines which are parallel to the same given line are parallel to each other. If three parallel lines are intersected by two transversals in such a way that the two intercepts on one transversal are equal to each other, the two intercepts on the second transversal are also equal.
- A line through the midpoint of the side of a triangle parallel to another side bisects the third side.
- When a transversal intersects two parallel lines then:
  - Corresponding angles are congruent.
  - Vertically opposite angles are congruent.
  - Alternate interior angles are congruent.
  - Interior angles are supplementary.
- A polygon is a closed plane figure with three or more straight sides.
- A parallelogram is a special type of quadrilateral whose pairs of opposite sides are parallel and equal.
- A regular polygon's sides are all of the same length and all its angles have the same measure.
- A circle is a simple plane shape of geometry with all its points are at the same distance (called the radius) from a fixed point (called the centre of the circle).
- Chord is a line segment whose endpoints lie on the circle.
- Secant is an extended chord, a straight line cutting the circle at two points.
- Sector is a region bounded by two radii and an arc lying between these two radii.
- Two or more circles with common centre and different radii are called concentric circles.
- A set of points are said to be concyclic (or cocyclic) if they lie on a common circle.
- Tangent is a straight line that touches the circle at a single point.

CHAPTER

8

# Practical Geometry

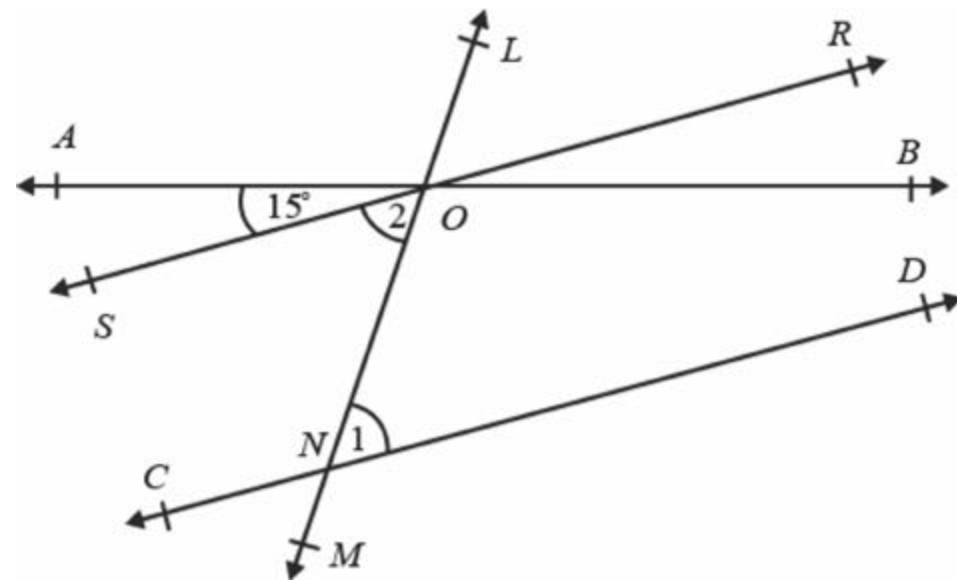
*Animation 8.1: Hexagon*  
*Source & Credit: wikipedia*

---

## 8.1 Define and depict two Converging (non-parallel) lines and find the angle between them without producing the lines

### 8.1.1 Definition:

Lines intersecting at a single point are called converging lines. In the following figure,  $\overleftrightarrow{AB}$  and  $\overleftrightarrow{CD}$  are converging lines and  $\overleftrightarrow{LM}$  is a transversal intersecting these lines. Find the angle between converging lines.



#### Steps of construction:

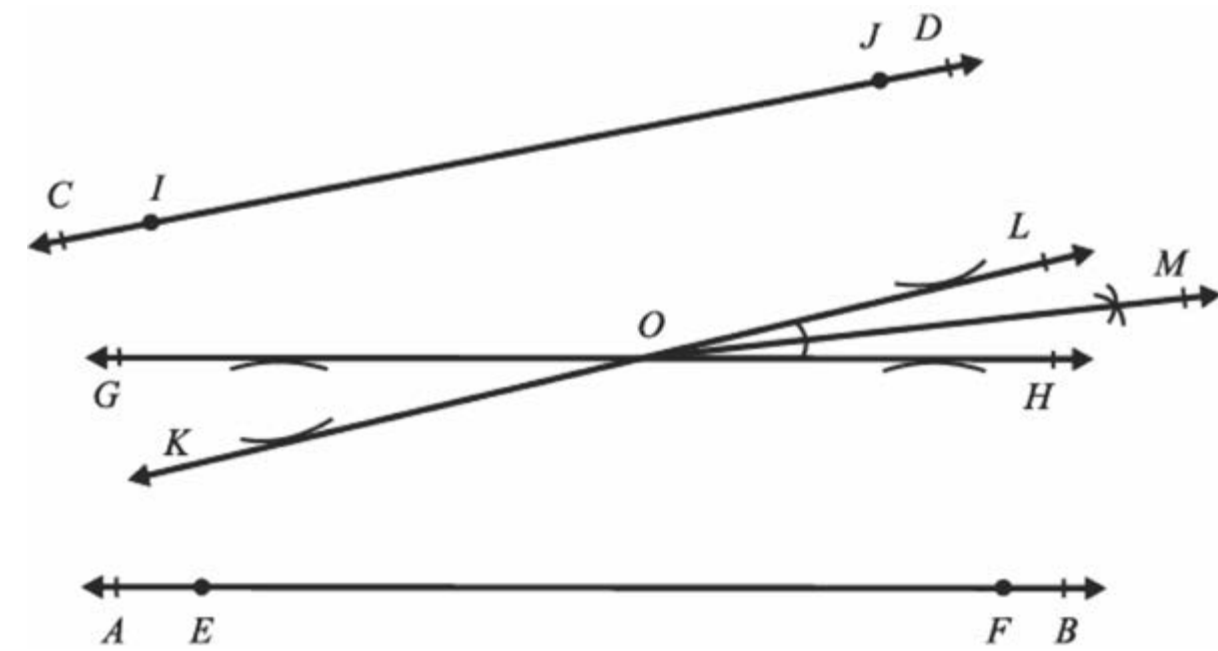
- $\overleftrightarrow{AB}$  and  $\overleftrightarrow{CD}$  are two converging lines and  $\overleftrightarrow{LM}$  is the transversal which intersects these lines at points  $O$  and  $N$ .
- Draw  $m\angle 2 = m\angle 1$  with compass and straightedge. Thus  $\overleftrightarrow{SOR}$  is parallel to  $\overleftrightarrow{CD}$ .
- Since  $\overleftrightarrow{CD}$  and  $\overleftrightarrow{SR}$  are parallel, therefore  $m\angle BOR$  is the required angle.
- Hence, angle between converging lines is  $15^\circ$  which is measured by using protractor.

### 8.1.2 Bisect the angle between two converging lines without producing them

We can find the angle bisector of two converging lines by performing the following

version: 1.1

steps:



#### Steps of construction:

- $\overleftrightarrow{AB}$  and  $\overleftrightarrow{CD}$  are two converging lines.
- Draw two arcs of same radius from points  $E$  and  $F$  above  $\overleftrightarrow{AB}$  by using compass and draw  $\overleftrightarrow{GH}$  touching these arcs.
- Also draw two arcs of same radius from points  $I$  and  $J$  below  $\overleftrightarrow{CD}$  by using compass and draw  $\overleftrightarrow{KL}$  touching these arcs.
- $\angle HOL$  is the angle between the two convergent lines.
- Draw the bisector  $\overleftrightarrow{OM}$  of  $\angle HOL$  which is the required bisector of given converging lines.

### 8.1.3 Construct a square

#### (a) When its diagonal is given.

#### Example:

Draw a square  $ABCD$  such that its diagonal is  $4\text{cm}$ .

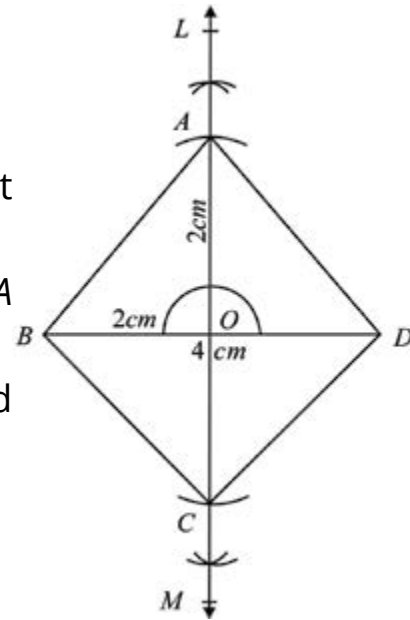
#### Solution:

One of the diagonals of the square  $ABCD$  is  $\overline{BD}$  and  $m\overline{BD} = 4\text{cm}$

[Note: In a square both the diagonals are of same length]

version: 1.1

- Draw the diagonal  $m\overline{BD} = 4\text{cm}$
- Draw a perpendicular bisector  $\overleftrightarrow{LM}$  of the diagonal  $\overline{BD}$  cutting it at point  $O$ .
- With  $O$  as centre and radius  $m\overline{OB}$ , draw arcs cutting  $\overleftrightarrow{LM}$  at  $A$  and  $C$ .
- Join  $A$  with  $B$  and  $D$ , and  $C$  with  $B$  and  $D$ , which gives the required square  $ABCD$



### (b) When the difference between its diagonal and side is given

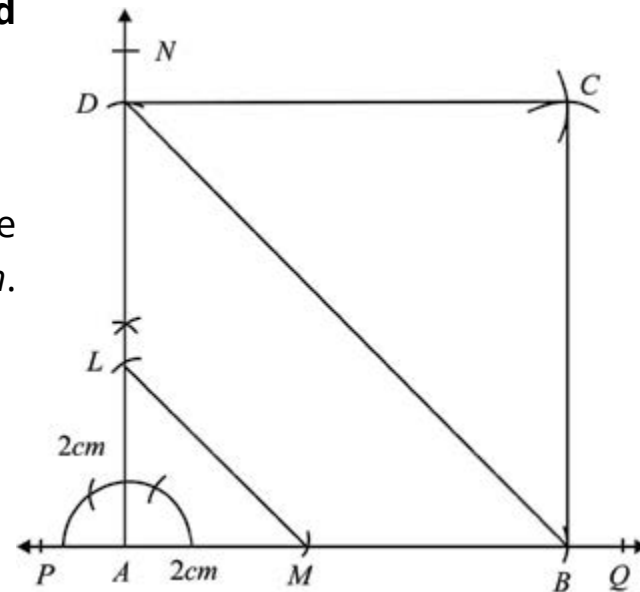
#### Example: 1

Draw a square  $ABCD$  when the difference between its diagonal and side is equal to  $2\text{cm}$ .

#### Solution:

##### Steps of construction:

- Draw  $\overleftrightarrow{PQ}$  and mark a point as  $A$  on it.
- Construct  $m\angle QAN = 90^\circ$  at  $A$ .
- Draw two arcs of radius  $2\text{cm}$  and centre at  $A$  which intersects  $\overrightarrow{AQ}$  at  $M$  and  $\overrightarrow{AN}$  at  $L$ .
- Draw an arc of radius  $= m\overline{LM}$  and centre at  $M$  which intersects  $\overrightarrow{AQ}$  at  $B$ .
- Draw an arc of radius  $= m\overline{AB}$  and centre at  $A$  which intersects  $\overrightarrow{AN}$  at  $D$ .
- Draw two arcs each of radius  $= m\overline{AB}$ , one centre at  $B$  and second centre at  $D$ . These arcs will intersect at point  $C$ .
- Join  $C$  with  $D$  and  $B$ .  
Hence,  $ABCD$  is the required square.



### (c) When the sum of its diagonal and side is given

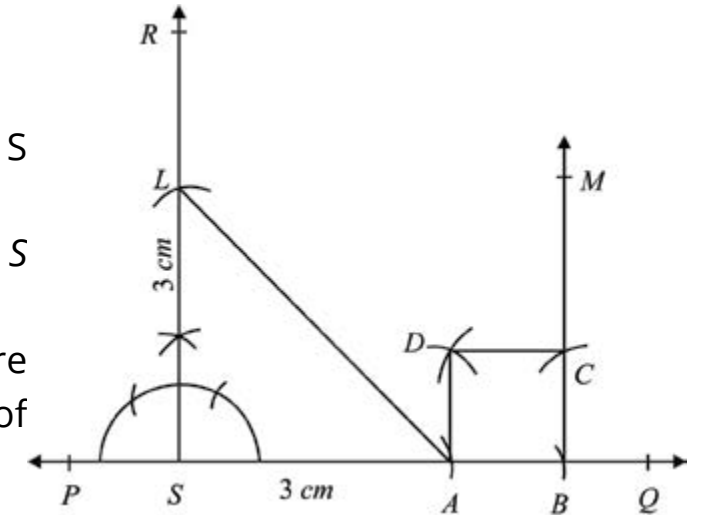
#### Example:

Draw a square  $ABCD$  when the sum of its diagonal and side is equal to  $3\text{cm}$ .

#### Solution:

##### Steps of construction:

- Draw  $\overleftrightarrow{PQ}$  and mark a point as  $S$  on it.
- Construct  $m\angle QSR = 90^\circ$  at point  $S$ .
- Draw an arc of radius  $3\text{cm}$  and centre at  $S$  intersecting  $\overrightarrow{SR}$  at  $L$ .
- Draw an arc of radius  $3\text{cm}$  and centre at  $S$  intersecting  $\overrightarrow{SQ}$  at  $A$ .
- Draw an arc of radius  $= m\overline{AL}$  and centre at  $S$  which intersects  $\overrightarrow{SQ}$  at  $B$ .  $\overline{AB}$  is the side of the required square.
- Draw perpendicular  $\overrightarrow{BM}$  at  $B$ .
- Draw an arc of radius  $m\overline{AB}$  and centre at  $B$  which intersects  $\overrightarrow{BM}$  at  $C$ .
- Draw two arcs, each of radius  $m\overline{AB}$ , one with centre at  $A$  and second with centre at  $C$  which intersects at  $D$ .
- Join  $C$  with  $D$  and  $D$  with  $A$ .  
Hence,  $ABCD$  is the required square.



### 8.1.4 Construct a rectangle

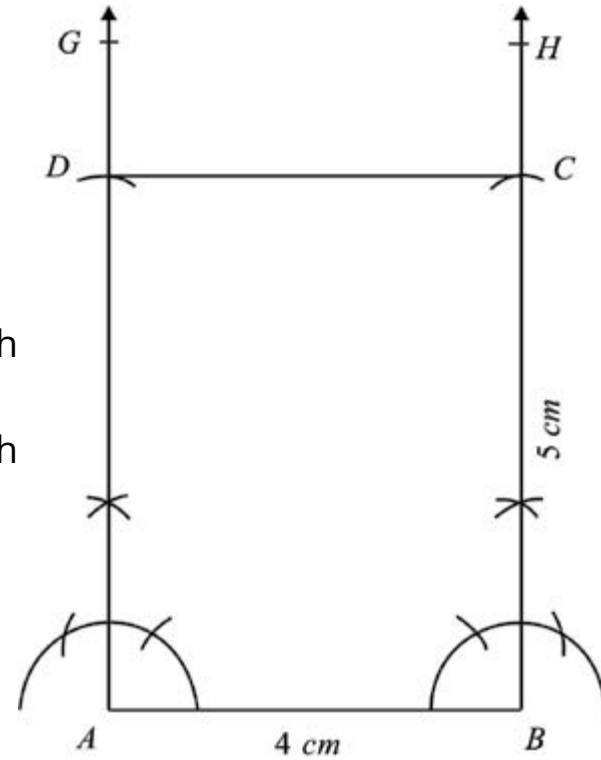
#### (a) When two sides are given

#### Example:

Construct a rectangle  $ABCD$  in which  $m\overline{AB} = 4\text{cm}$  and  $m\overline{BC} = 5\text{cm}$ .

**Solution:****Steps of construction:**

- Draw  $m\overline{AB} = 4\text{cm}$ .
  - Construct  $m\angle A = m\angle B = 90^\circ$  and draw  $\vec{AG}$  and  $\vec{BH}$ .
  - Draw an arc with centre at  $A$  and of radius  $5\text{cm}$  which intersects the  $\vec{AG}$  at point  $D$ .
  - Draw an arc with centre at  $B$  and of radius  $5\text{cm}$  which intersects the  $\vec{BH}$  at point  $C$ .
  - Join  $C$  with  $D$ .
- Hence,  $ABCD$  is the required rectangle.



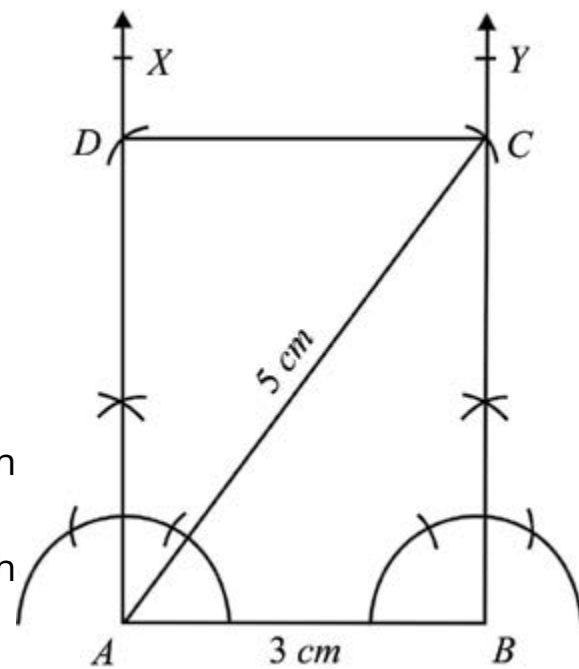
**Note:** Sum of interior angles of a quadrilateral is equal to  $360^\circ$

**(b) When the diagonal and a side are given****Example:**

Construct a rectangle  $ABCD$  when  $m\overline{AB} = 3\text{cm}$  and  $m\overline{AC} = 5\text{cm}$

**Solution:****Steps of construction:**

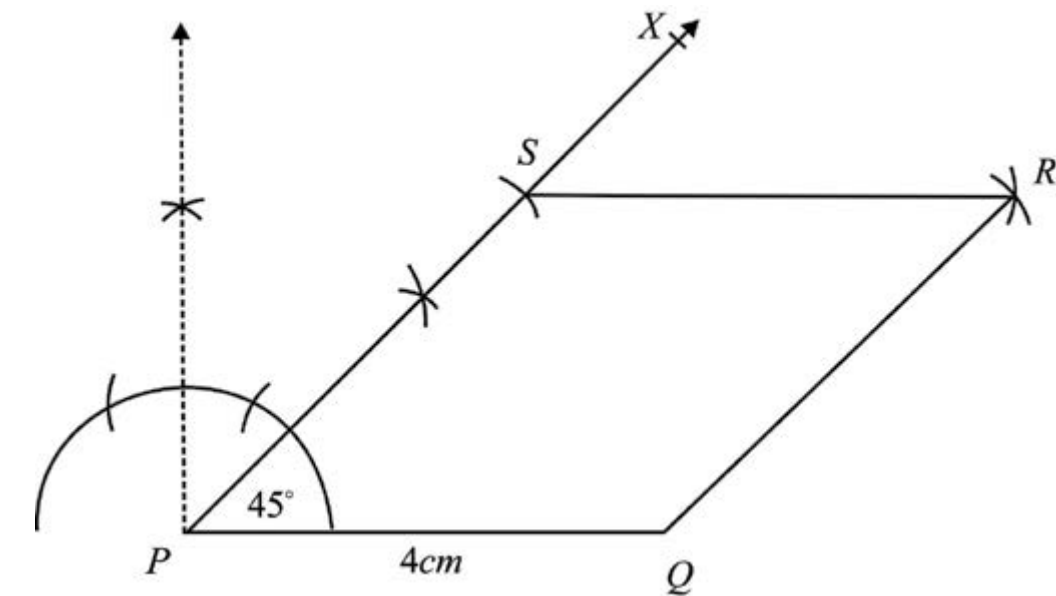
- Draw  $m\overline{AB} = 3\text{cm}$ .
  - Construct  $m\angle A = m\angle B = 90^\circ$  and draw  $\vec{AX}$  and  $\vec{BY}$ .
  - With center at  $A$  and radius  $5\text{cm}$  draw an arc which intersects  $\vec{BY}$  at the point  $C$ .
  - With center at  $B$  and radius  $5\text{cm}$  draw an arc which intersects  $\vec{AX}$  at the point  $D$  and joint  $C$  and  $D$ .
- Hence,  $ABCD$  is the required rectangle.

**8.1.5 Construct a rhombus****(a) When one side and the base angle are given.****Example:**

Construct a rhombus  $PQRS$  when the  $m\overline{PQ} = 4\text{cm}$  and  $m\angle P = 45^\circ$

**Solution:****Steps of construction:**

- Draw  $m\overline{PQ} = 4\text{cm}$ .
- Construct  $m\angle P = 45^\circ$  and draw  $\vec{PX}$ .
- Draw an arc with center at  $P$  and radius  $4\text{cm}$  which intersects  $\vec{PX}$  at  $S$ .



- Draw an arc with center at  $S$  and radius  $4\text{cm}$ .
  - Draw an arc with center at  $Q$  and radius  $4\text{cm}$  which intersects the previous arc drawn from  $S$  at  $R$ .
  - Join  $R$  with  $S$  and with  $Q$ .
- Hence,  $PQRS$  is the required rhombus.

**(b) When one side and a diagonal are given.**

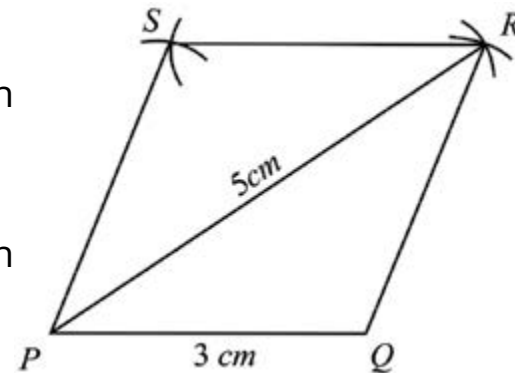


**Example:**

Construct a rhombus  $PQRS$ , when  $m\overline{PQ} = 3\text{cm}$  and  $m\overline{PR} = 5\text{cm}$ .

**Solution:****Steps of construction:**

- Draw  $m\overline{PQ} = 3\text{cm}$ .
- Draw an arc with center at  $P$  and radius  $5\text{cm}$ .
- Draw an arc with center at  $Q$  and radius  $3\text{cm}$  which intersects the previous arc at  $R$ .
- Draw an arc with center at  $R$  and radius  $3\text{cm}$ .
- Draw an arc with center at  $P$  and radius  $3\text{cm}$  which intersects the previous arc at  $S$ .
- Join  $Q$  with  $R$ ,  $R$  with  $S$  and  $P$  with  $S$ .  
Hence,  $PQRS$  is the required rhombus.

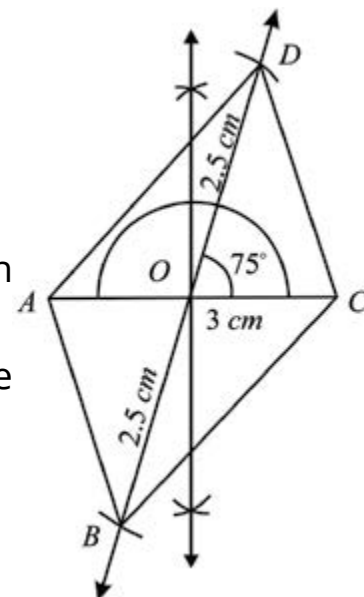
**8.1.6 Construct a parallelogram****(a) When two diagonals and the angle between them is given.****Example:**

Construct a parallelogram  $ABCD$  whose diagonals are  $3\text{cm}$  and  $5\text{cm}$  and the angle between them is  $75^\circ$

**Solution:****Steps of construction:**

- Draw diagonal  $m\overline{AC} = 3\text{cm}$
- Bisect  $\overline{AC}$  with  $O$  as the midpoint.
- Construct an angle  $75^\circ$  at the point  $O$  and extend the line on both sides.
- From  $O$ , draw an arc of radius  $2.5\text{cm}$  on both sides of  $\overline{AC}$  to cut the above line at  $B$  and  $D$ .
- Join  $A$  with  $B$  and  $D$ .
- Join  $C$  with  $B$  and  $D$ .

Hence,  $ABCD$  is the required parallelogram.



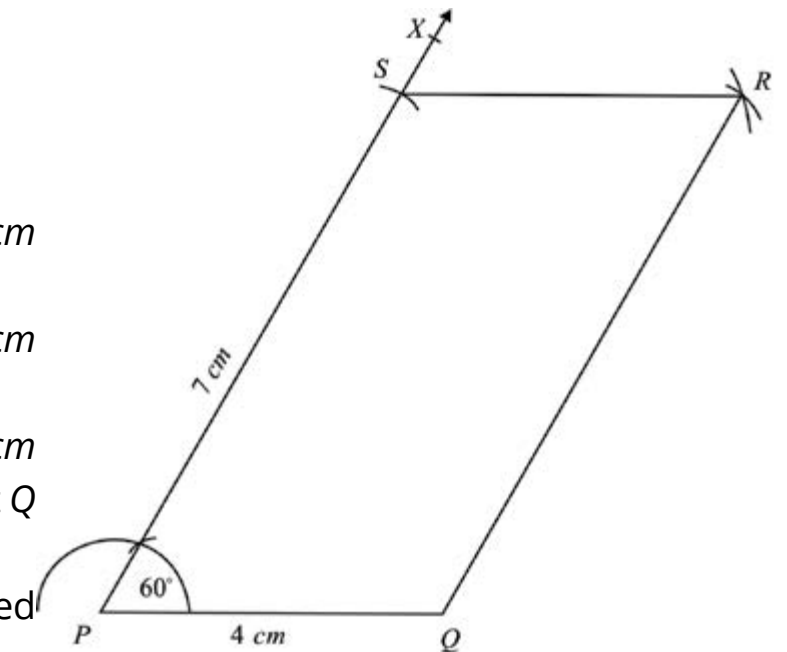
version: 1.1

**(b) When two adjacent sides and the angle included between them are given****Example:**

Construct a parallelogram  $PQRS$  when  $m\overline{PQ} = 4\text{cm}$ ,  $m\overline{PS} = 7\text{cm}$  and included angle between these sides is  $m\angle QPS = 60^\circ$ .

**Solution:****Steps of construction:**

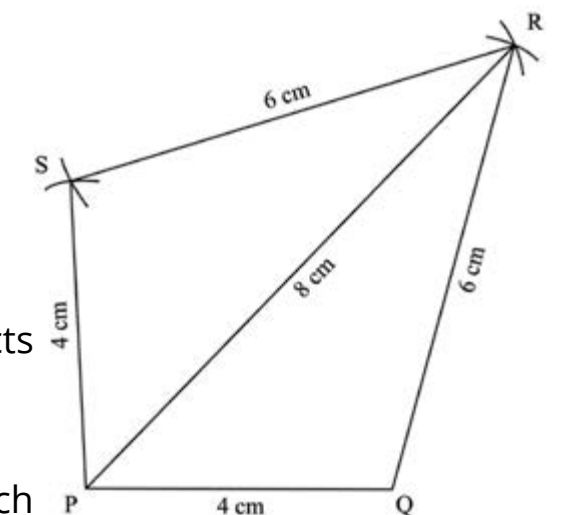
- Draw a line segment  $PQ = 4\text{cm}$ .
- Construct  $m\angle QPX = 60^\circ$  at point  $P$ .
- Draw an arc with centre at  $P$  and radius  $7\text{cm}$  which intersects  $\overrightarrow{PX}$  at point  $S$ .
- Draw an arc with centre at  $Q$  and radius  $7\text{cm}$  above point  $Q$ .
- Draw an arc with centre at  $S$  and radius  $4\text{cm}$  which intersects the arc drawn from point  $Q$  at  $R$ .
- Join  $R$  with  $S$  and  $Q$  to  $R$  to form the required parallelogram  $PQRS$ .

**8.1.7 Construct a kite when two unequal sides and a diagonal are given****Example:**

Construct a kite  $PQRS$  when  $m\overline{PQ} = 4\text{cm}$ ,  $m\overline{QR} = 6\text{cm}$  and the length of the longer diagonal is  $m\overline{PR} = 8\text{cm}$ .

**Solution:****Steps of construction:**

- Draw  $m\overline{PQ} = 4\text{cm}$ .
- Draw an arc with center at  $Q$  and radius  $6\text{cm}$ .
- Draw an arc with centre at  $P$  and radius  $8\text{cm}$ . It intersects the previous arc at point  $R$ .
- Draw an arc with centre  $P$  and radius  $4\text{cm}$  above  $P$ .
- Draw an arc with centre at  $R$  and radius  $6\text{cm}$  which



version: 1.1

intersects the arc drawn from  $P$  at  $S$ .

- vi. Join  $R$  with  $Q$  and  $S$  and  $P$  with  $S$ .  
Hence,  $PQRS$  is the required kite.

### 8.1.8 Construct a regular pentagon when a side IS given

**Example:** Construct a regular pentagon  $PQRST$  when  $m\overline{PQ} = 4\text{cm}$

**Solution:**

**Steps of construction:**

- i. Draw  $m\overline{PQ} = 4\text{cm}$ .  
ii. Construct  $m\angle P = m\angle Q = 108^\circ$ .

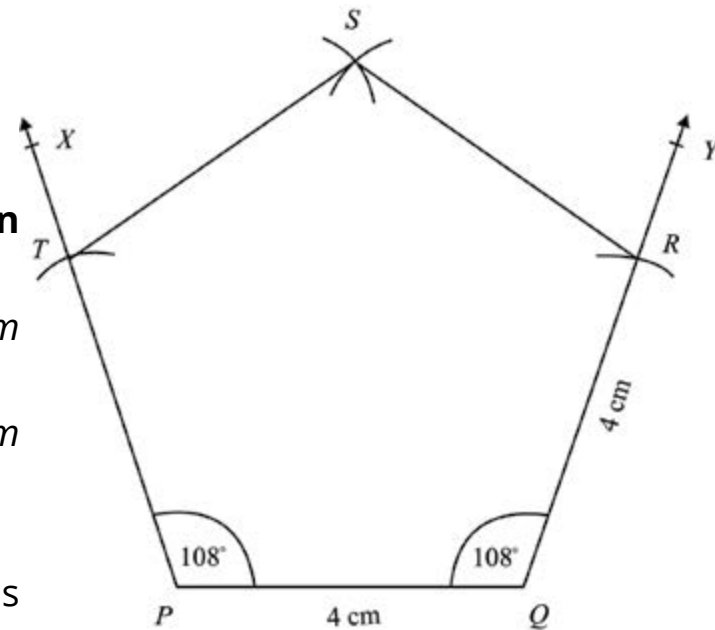
[Note: Each interior angle of a regular pentagon is equal to  $108^\circ$ .]

- iii. Draw an arc with centre at  $P$  and radius  $4\text{cm}$  which intersects  $\overrightarrow{PX}$  at  $T$ .  
iv. Draw an arc with centre at  $Q$  and radius  $4\text{cm}$  which intersects  $\overrightarrow{QY}$  at  $R$ .  
v. Draw an arc with centre at  $R$  and radius  $4\text{cm}$ .  
vi. Draw an arc with centre at  $T$  and radius  $4\text{cm}$ .

It intersects the arc drawn from point  $R$  at the point  $S$ .

- vii. Join  $R$  with  $S$  and  $T$  with  $S$ .

Hence,  $PQRST$  is the required regular pentagon.



### 8.1.9 Construct a regular hexagon when a side is given

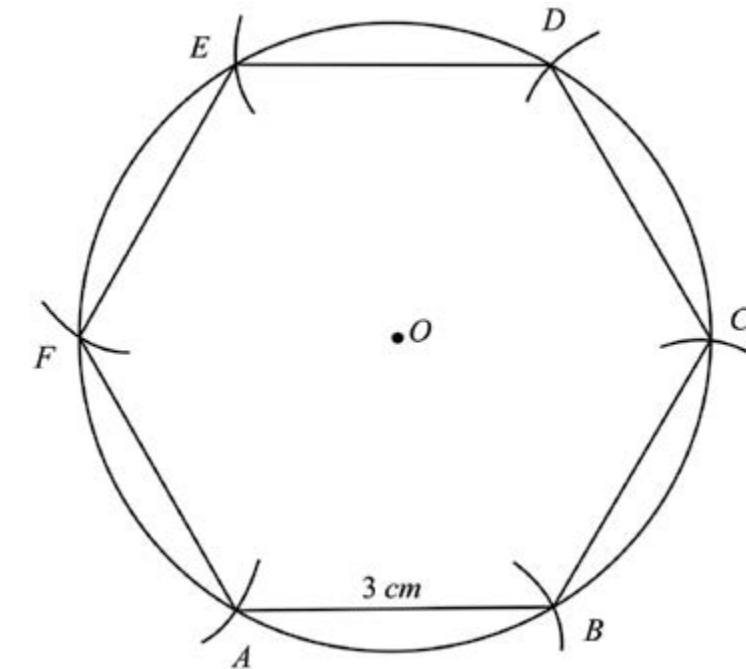
**Example:**

Construct a regular hexagon  $ABCDEF$  when  $m\overline{AB} = 3\text{cm}$

**Solution:**

**Steps of construction:**

- i. Draw a circle of radius  $3\text{cm}$  with center at  $O$ .



- ii. Take a point  $A$  on the circle, draw an arc on the circle with centre  $A$  and radius  $3\text{cm}$ . Label it as  $B$ .  
iii. Take  $B$  as the center and radius  $3\text{cm}$  draw an arc on the circle, mark it as  $C$ .  
iv. Take  $C$  as the center and radius  $3\text{cm}$  draw an arc on the circle, mark it as  $D$ .  
v. Take  $D$  as the center and radius  $3\text{cm}$  draw an arc on the circle, mark it as  $E$ .  
vi. Take  $E$  as the center and radius  $3\text{cm}$  draw an arc on the circle, mark it as  $F$ .  
vii. Join  $B$  with  $C$ ,  $C$  with  $D$ ,  $D$  with  $E$ ,  $E$  with  $F$  and  $F$  with  $A$ .  
Hence,  $ABCDEF$  is the required regular hexagon.

**Note:** Each interior angle of a regular hexagon is equal to  $120^\circ$

### Exercise 8.1

- Construct a square  $ABCD$  when a diagonal  $m\overline{AC} = 4.5\text{cm}$ .
- Construct a square  $PQRS$  when its diagonal is  $4\text{cm}$  more than its side.
- Construct a square  $PQRS$ , when the sum of the diagonal and a side of the square is  $8\text{cm}$ .
- Construct a rectangle  $ABCD$  when  $m\overline{AB} = 4\text{cm}$  and  $m\overline{BC} = 6\text{cm}$ .
- Construct a rectangle  $ABCD$ , when the  $m\overline{AB} = 5.5\text{cm}$  and  $m\overline{AC} = 8\text{cm}$ .
- Construct a rhombus  $KLMN$ , when the  $m\overline{KL} = 5\text{cm}$ ,  $m\angle K = 75^\circ$ .

7. Construct a rhombus  $STUV$ , when  $m\overline{ST} = 6cm$  and  $m\overline{SU} = 9cm$ .
8. Construct a parallelogram  $ABCD$  with diagonals  $6cm$  and  $8cm$  and the angle between them  $70^\circ$ .
9. Construct a parallelogram  $DEFG$  where  $m\overline{DE} = 5.5cm$ ,  $m\overline{EF} = 6.5cm$  and  $m\angle E = 60^\circ$ .
10. Construct a kite  $DEFG$  where  $m\overline{DE} = 4cm$ ,  $m\overline{EF} = 8cm$  and the length of the longer diagonal is  $m\overline{DF} = 10cm$ .
11. Construct a regular pentagon  $ABCDE$ , where  $m\overline{AB} = 3.2cm$ .
12. Construct a regular hexagon  $STUVWX$ , where  $m\overline{ST} = 3cm$ .

## 8.2 Construction of a Right angled triangle

### (a) Construct a right angled triangle when hypotenuse and one side are given

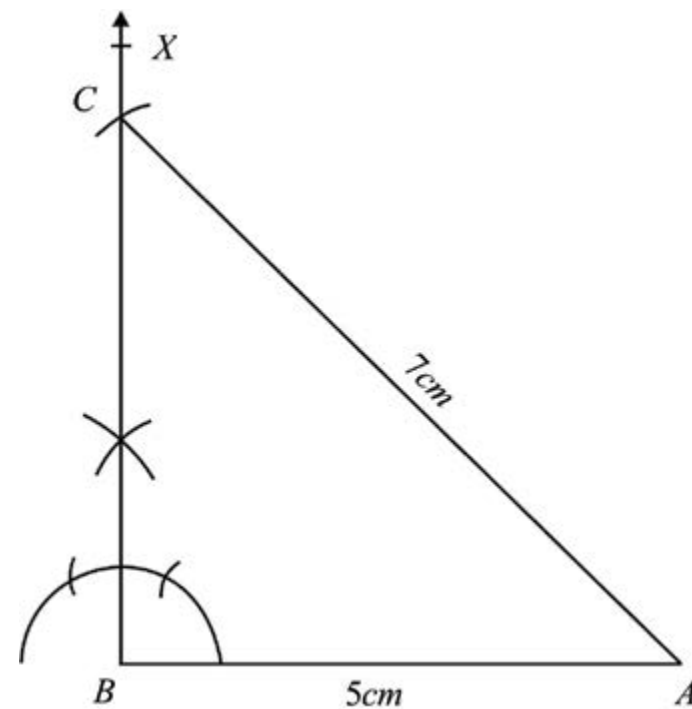
**Example:** Construct a right angled triangle  $ABC$ , when  $m\overline{AB} = 5cm$ ,  $m\overline{AC} = 7cm$  and  $m\angle B = 90^\circ$

**Solution:**

**Steps of construction:**

- i. Draw  $m\overline{AB} = 5cm$ .
- ii. Construct  $m\angle B = 90^\circ$ . Draw  $\overrightarrow{BX}$
- iii. Take  $A$  as the center and radius  $7cm$ . Draw an arc on intersecting  $\overrightarrow{BX}$  at  $C$ .
- iv. Join  $A$  with  $C$ .

Hence,  $ABC$  is the required right angled triangle.



### (b) Construct a right angled triangle when hypotenuse and the vertical height from its vertex to the hypotenuse are given

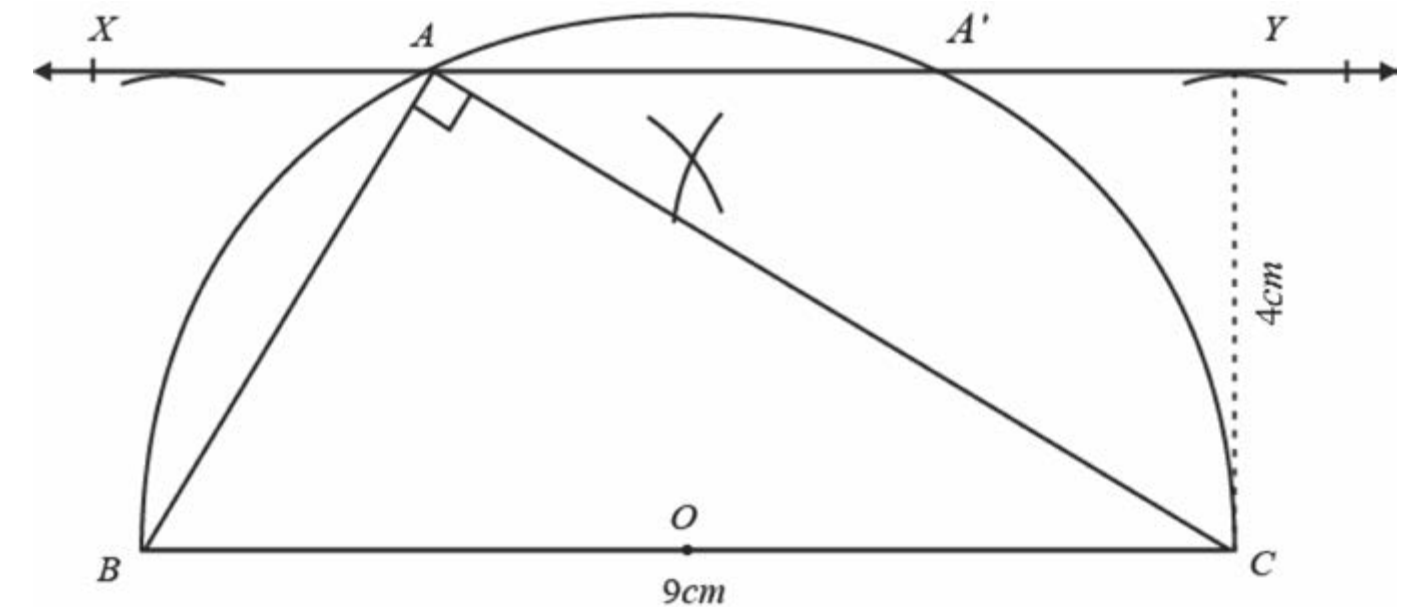
**Example:**

Construct a right angled triangle  $ABC$ , when hypotenuse  $m\overline{BC} = 9cm$  and perpendicular

from vertex  $A$  to  $\overline{BC}$  is  $4cm$ .

**Solution:**

**Steps of construction:**



- i. Draw a  $m\overline{BC} = 9cm$ .
- ii. Bisect the  $\overline{BC}$  at point  $O$  with the help of compass.
- iii. Draw a semi circle taking point  $O$  as centre.
- iv. Draw two arcs of radius  $4cm$  taking points  $B$  and  $C$  as center above  $\overline{BC}$ .
- v. Draw  $\overrightarrow{XY}$  touching the two arcs which intersects the semi circle at points  $A$  and  $A'$ .
- vi. Join  $A$  with  $B$  and  $C$ .  
 $\triangle ABC$  is the required right angled triangle at  $A$ .

**Exercise 8.2**

1. Construct following right angled triangles when:
  - a. Hypotenuse =  $8.5\text{cm}$  and length of a side is  $6\text{cm}$ .
  - b. Hypotenuse =  $6\text{cm}$  and length of a side is  $3\text{cm}$ .
  - c. Hypotenuse =  $5\text{cm}$  and length of a side is  $2.5\text{cm}$ .
2. Construct a right angled triangle  $ABC$ , when  $m\overline{AB} = 4.5\text{cm}$ ,  $m\overline{BC} = 5.5\text{cm}$  and  $m\angle B = 90^\circ$ .
3. Construct a right angled triangle  $PQR$ , when  $m\overline{QR} = 8\text{cm}$ ,  $m\overline{PQ} = 5\text{cm}$  and  $m\angle Q = 90^\circ$ .
4. Construct a right angled triangle  $LMN$ , when hypotenuse  $m\overline{MN} = 8\text{cm}$  and perpendicular from vertex  $L$  to  $\overline{MN}$  is  $3.5\text{cm}$ .

**REVIEW EXERCISE 8**

1. Four options are given against each statement. Encircle the correct one.
  
2. Construct the following:
  - i. Square  $PQRS$  such that  $m\overline{RS} = 4\text{cm}$ .
  - ii. Square  $ABCD$  such that  $m\overline{AC} = 3.5\text{cm}$ .
  - iii. Square  $WXYZ$ , when the difference of its diagonal and side is  $5\text{cm}$ .
  - iv. Square  $PQRS$ , when the sum of its diagonal and side is  $8\text{cm}$ .
  - v. Rectangle  $ABCD$  in which  $m\overline{AB} = 5.5\text{cm}$  and  $m\overline{BC} = 8\text{cm}$ .
  - vi. Rectangle  $LMNO$ , when  $m\overline{LM} = 6\text{cm}$  and  $m\overline{LN} = 4\text{cm}$ .
  - vii. Rhombus  $PQRS$ , when  $m\overline{PQ} = 5.5\text{cm}$  and  $m\angle P = 75^\circ$ .
  - viii. Parallelogram  $ABCD$  whose diagonals are  $5\text{cm}$  and  $9\text{cm}$  and the included angle is  $80^\circ$ .
  - ix. Parallelogram  $UVWX$  with sides  $m\overline{UV} = 8\text{cm}$ ,  $m\overline{UX} = 5\text{cm}$  and  $m\angle U = 60^\circ$ .
  - x. Kite  $ABCD$  with  $m\overline{AB} = 4\text{cm}$ ,  $m\overline{BC} = 6\text{cm}$  and the length of the longer diagonal is  $m\overline{AC} = 8\text{cm}$ .
  - xi. Regular pentagon  $GHIJK$ , when  $m\overline{GH} = 4\text{cm}$ .

**SUMMARY**

- Quadrilateral is a 4-sided polygon which has the sum of interior angles equal to  $360^\circ$ .
- Converging lines are non-parallel lines which meet at a single point.
- Diagonals of a rectangle, a square, a parallelogram and a rhombus bisect each other.
- Diagonals of a square and a rhombus bisect each other at  $90^\circ$ .
- Diagonals of a square and a rectangle are of equal lengths.
- In a regular hexagon, the sum of measures of interior angles is  $720^\circ$  and the measure of each interior angle is  $120^\circ$ .
- In a regular pentagon, the sum of measures of interior angles is  $540^\circ$  and the measure of each interior angle is  $108^\circ$ .

CHAPTER



# Areas and Volumes

*Animation 9.1: Area & Perimeter*  
*Source & Credit: eLearn.punjab*

---

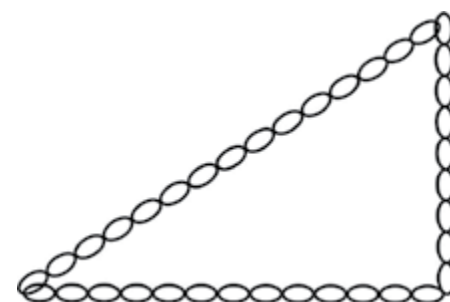


## 9.1 PYTHAGORAS THEOREM

Pythagoras theorem is an important theorem in geometry. It is named after a **Greek Mathematician Pythagoras** 2500 Years ago. He thought of inventing it when he observed a strange method adopted by Egyptians to measure the width of River Nile.



Pythagoras 570-495



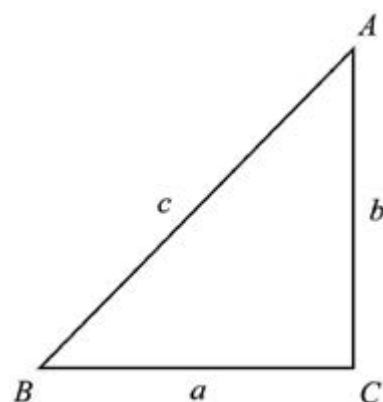
They measure it by the help of a triangle formed by chains with the ratio among its sides as 3 : 4 : 5

### 9.1.1 STATEMENT OF PYTHAGORAS THEOREM

In a right angled triangle  $ABC$  with  $m\angle C = 90^\circ$  and  $a, b, c$  are opposite sides of the angles  $\angle A, \angle B$  and  $\angle C$  respectively then

$$a^2 + b^2 = c^2$$

$$(\text{Base})^2 + (\text{Altitude})^2 = (\text{Hypotenuse})^2$$



#### Remember that:

The hypotenuse of a right angled triangle is opposite side to the right angle. The adjacent horizontal side of the right angle is the base, and vertical side is the altitude.

#### INFORMAL PROOF OF PYTHAGORAS THEOREM

We shall prove it with the help of an activity.

#### Activity

**Apparatus:** Hard paper, pencil, ruler, pair of scissors and coloured pencils

**Step I:** Draw a right angled triangle  $ABC$  with sides  $a, b$  and  $c$ , where

$$m\angle C = 90^\circ \text{ and } a : b : c = 3 : 4 : 5$$

**Step II:** Draw squares on sides  $a, b$  and  $c$  adjacent to the respective sides as shown in the figure.

**Step III:** Since  $a : b : c = 3 : 4 : 5$ , so divide the lengths of sides of the square  $a, b$  and  $c$  into 3, 4 and 5 strips of equal width as shown in the figure.

**Step IV:** Colour the strips as shown in the figure.

**Step V:** Now cut the square into strips of side  $b$  with the help of a pair of scissors.

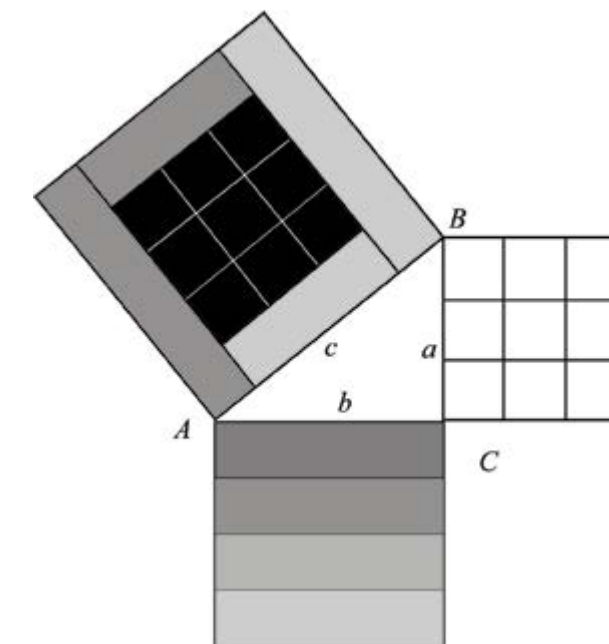
**Step VI:** Place the square of side " $a$ " in the middle and the strips of the square side " $b$ " on the square side " $c$ " as shown in the figure.

We can observe that the area of the square of side " $c$ " is equal to the total area of the square of side " $b$ " and the square of side " $a$ ".

Hence it is proved that:

$$a^2 + b^2 = c^2$$

$$(\text{Base})^2 + (\text{Altitude})^2 = (\text{Hypotenuse})^2$$



### 9.1.2 Solution of Right Angled Triangle through Pythagoras Theorem

Pythagoras theorem is usually applied for finding out the length of the third side of a right angled triangle while the lengths of two sides are known.

If " $c$ " is the side opposite to the right angle, then

$$c^2 = a^2 + b^2$$

$$\text{or } a^2 = c^2 - b^2$$

$$\text{or } b^2 = c^2 - a^2$$

**Example 1:** In the given figure of triangle  $ABC$ , find the length of side  $AB$ .

**Solution:** Let  $\overline{mAB} = x$

By Pythagoras theorem

$$c^2 = a^2 + b^2, \quad m\angle C = 90^\circ$$

Here  $c = x, \quad a = 5\text{cm}, \quad b = 12\text{cm}$

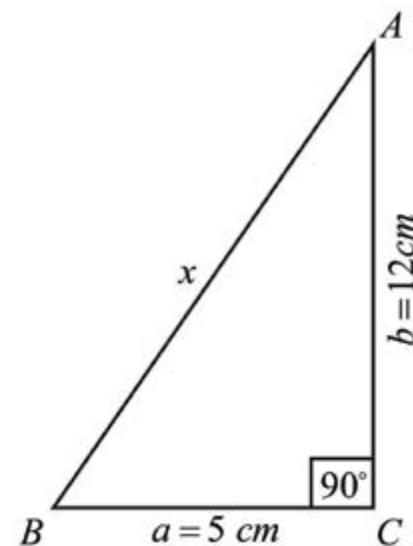
$$\therefore x^2 = 5^2 + (12)^2$$

$$= 25 + 144$$

$$x^2 = 169$$

$$x = \sqrt{169} = 13\text{cm}$$

So,  $\overline{mAB} = 13\text{cm}$



**Example 2:** The length and width of a rectangle are  $8\text{cm}$  and  $6\text{cm}$  respectively. Find the length of its diagonals.

**Solution:** Let  $ABCD$  be the rectangle

and let  $\overline{mBD} = x\text{ cm}$ .

In right angled triangle  $BCD$

$m\angle C = 90^\circ$ , Base =  $\overline{mBC} = 8\text{cm}$

Altitude =  $\overline{mCD} = 6\text{cm}$

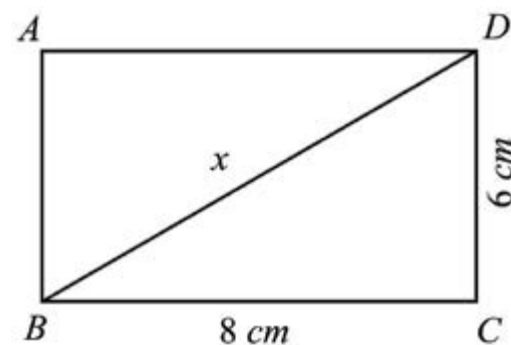
Hypotenuse =  $\overline{mBD} = x\text{ cm}$

By Pythagoras theorem

$$x^2 = 8^2 + 6^2 = 64 + 36 = 100$$

$$x = 10\text{cm} \quad \text{or} \quad \overline{mBD} = 10\text{cm}$$

Since the two diagonals of a rectangle are equal in length, so  $\overline{mAC} = 10\text{cm}$ .



**Example 3:** A ladder  $2.5\text{m}$  long is placed against a wall. If its upper end reaches the height of  $2\text{m}$  along the wall, then find the distance of the foot of the ladder from the wall.

**Solution:** Let  $x$  be the distance of the wall from the foot of the ladder.

Then by Pythagoras theorem  $c^2 = a^2 + b^2, \quad m\angle C = 90^\circ$

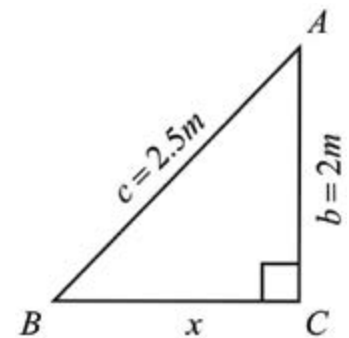
Here  $c = 2.5\text{m}, \quad a = x, \quad b = 2\text{m}$

As  $a^2 = c^2 - b^2$

$$\therefore x^2 = (2.5)^2 - (2)^2 = 6.25 - 4$$

or  $x^2 = 2.25$

$$x = 1.5\text{m}$$



**Example 4:** Find the area of a rectangular field whose length is  $20\text{m}$  and the length of its diagonal is  $25\text{m}$ .

**Solution:** Let us take right angled triangle  $ABC$ , then by Pythagoras theorem:

$$b^2 = a^2 + c^2, \quad m\angle B = 90^\circ$$

Here  $b = 25\text{m}, \quad a = 20\text{m}$

Let  $c = xm$

$$(25)^2 = x^2 + (20)^2$$

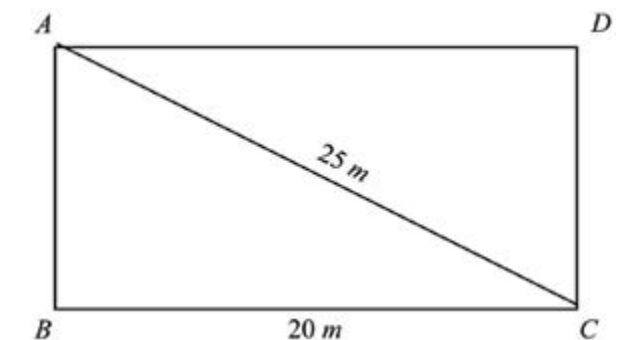
$$x^2 = (25)^2 - (20)^2 = 625 - 400 = 225$$

$$x^2 = 225 \Rightarrow x = \sqrt{225}\text{m} \Rightarrow x = 15\text{m}$$

Width of the rectangle =  $15\text{m}$

Length of the rectangle =  $20\text{m}$

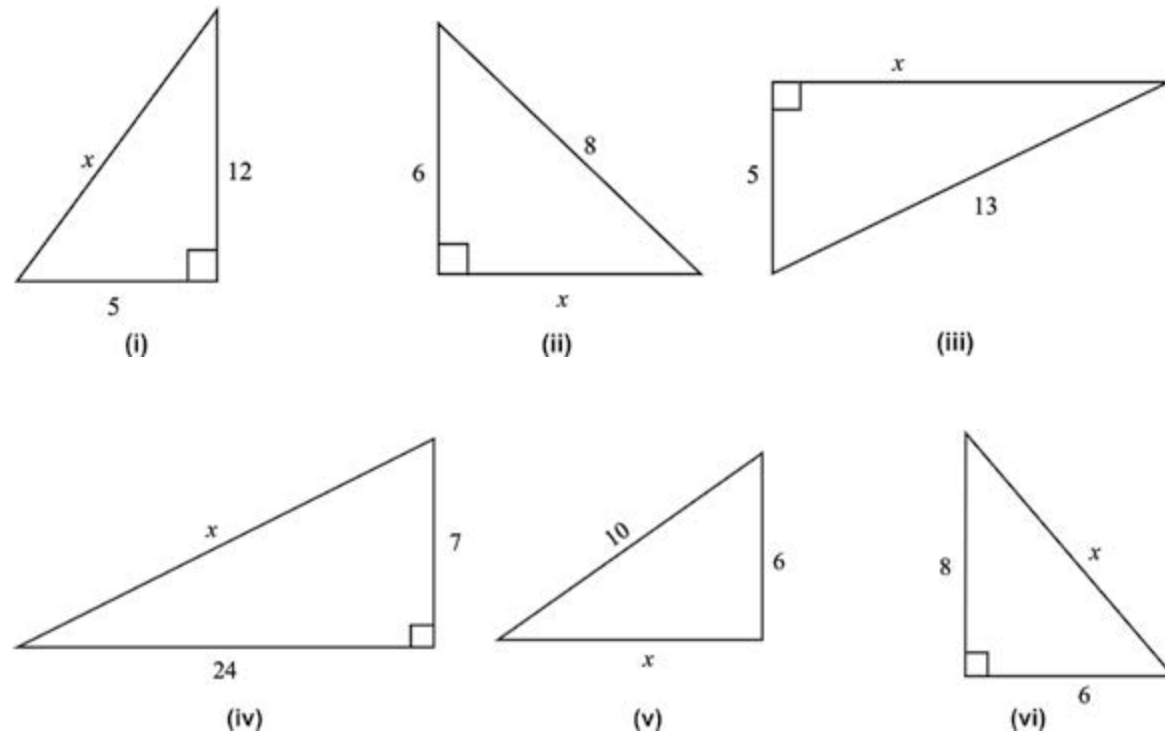
Thus, area of the rectangular field =  $20 \times 15 = 300\text{m}^2$



### EXERCISE 9.1

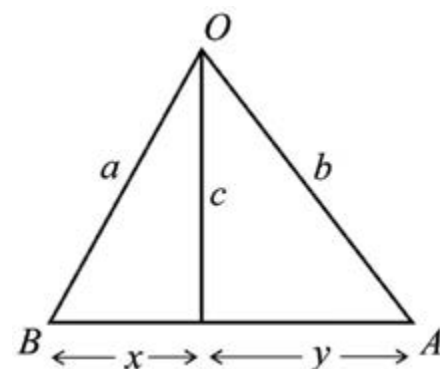
- In the right angled triangles (not drawn to scale), measurements (in  $\text{cm}$ ) of two of the sides are indicated in the figures. Find the value of  $x$  in each case.





2. In an isosceles right angled triangle, the square of the hypotenuse is  $98\text{cm}^2$ . Find the length of the congruent sides.
3. A ladder  $10\text{m}$  long is made to rest against a wall. Its lower end touches the ground at a distance of  $6\text{m}$  from the wall. At what height above the ground the upper end of the ladder rests against the wall?
4. In triangle  $ABC$ , right angle is at point  $C$ ,  $m \overline{BC} = 2.1\text{ cm}$  and  $m \overline{AC} = 7.2\text{ cm}$ . What is the length  $\overline{AB}$ ?
5. In the given figure prove that:

$$a^2 - x^2 = b^2 - y^2$$



6. The shadow of a pole measured from the foot of the pole is  $2.8\text{m}$  long. If the distance from the tip of the shadow to the tip of the pole is  $10.5\text{m}$  then find the length of the pole.
7. If  $a, b, c$  are the lengths of the sides of a triangle  $ABC$ . Then tell which of the following

triangles are not right angled triangles. Any of  $\angle A, \angle B$  and  $\angle C$  may be a right angle.

(i)  $a = 6, b = 5, c = 7$       (ii)  $a = 8, b = 9, c = \sqrt{145}$

(iii)  $a = 12, b = 5, c = 13$

8. In a right angled triangle  $ABC$  with hypotenuse  $c$  and sides  $a$  and  $b$ . Find the unknown length.

(i)  $a = 60\text{cm}, c = 61\text{cm}, b = ?$

(ii)  $a = \frac{5}{12}\text{cm}, c = \frac{13}{12}\text{cm}, b = ?$

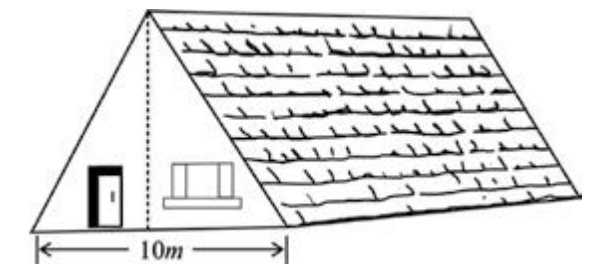
(iii)  $a = 2.4\text{m}, c = 2.6\text{m}, b = ?$

(iv)  $b = 10\text{m}, a = 4\sqrt{5}\text{m}, c = ?$

(v)  $b = 5\text{dm}, a = 5\sqrt{7}\text{dm}, c = ?$

(vi)  $c = 10\sqrt{2}\text{dm}, b = 5\sqrt{3}\text{dm}, a = ?$

9. The front of a house is in the shape of an equilateral triangle with the measure of one side is  $10\text{m}$ . Find the height of the house.



## 9.2 HERO'S FORMULA

In previous classes, we have learnt to find the area of right triangular regions. There are many methods for finding the areas of triangular regions. One of them is Hero's formula.

The formula was deduced by a **Greek Mathematician HERON OF ALEXANDRIA** and is named after him as **Hero's Formula**.

This formula is applied when the lengths of all sides of a triangle are known.

### 9.2.1 Statement of Hero's Formula

If  $a, b, c$  are the lengths of a triangle  $ABC$ , then the area of the triangle  $ABC$  denoted

as  $\Delta$  is given by

$$\Delta = \sqrt{s(s-a)(s-b)(s-c)}, \quad \text{where} \quad s = \frac{a+b+c}{2}$$

• **Finding the Areas of Triangular and Quadrilateral Regions**

**Example 1:** Find the area of a triangle while the lengths of its sides are 14cm, 21cm and 25cm respectively.

**Solution:** Let  $a = 14\text{cm}$ ,  $b = 21\text{cm}$  and  $c = 25\text{cm}$   
By Hero's Formula

$$\Delta = \sqrt{s(s-a)(s-b)(s-c)}, \quad \sqrt{225} \quad \text{where} \quad s = \frac{a+b+c}{2}$$

$$\text{Now } s = \frac{14 + 21 + 25}{2} = \frac{60}{2} = 30$$

$$a = 14\text{cm}, \quad b = 21\text{cm}, \quad c = 25\text{cm}, \quad s = 30$$

$$\therefore \Delta_{ABC} = \sqrt{30(30-14)(30-21)(30-25)} \text{ cm}^2$$

$$\Delta_{ABC} = \sqrt{30 \times 16 \times 9 \times 5} \text{ cm}^2 = \sqrt{5 \times 6 \times 4 \times 4 \times 3 \times 3 \times 5} \text{ cm}^2$$

$$= \sqrt{3^2 \times 4^2 \times 5^2 \times 6} \text{ cm}^2 \quad \text{and} \quad = 3 \times 4 \times 5\sqrt{6} \text{ cm}^2$$

$$\Delta_{ABC} = 60\sqrt{6} \text{ cm}^2$$

**Example 2:** Find the area of an isosceles triangle  $ABC$  in which  $m\overline{AB} = m\overline{AC} = 6\text{cm}$  and  $m\overline{BC} = 8\text{cm}$ .

**Solution:** Let  $a, b, c$  the sides opposite to the vertices  $A, B$  and  $C$  respectively.

Then  $a = 8\text{cm}$ ,  $b = 6\text{cm}$  and  $c = 6\text{cm}$

$$s = \frac{a+b+c}{2}$$

$$\text{or } s = \frac{8 + 6 + 6}{2} = \frac{20}{2} = 10\text{cm}$$

$$\Delta = \sqrt{s(s-a)(s-b)(s-c)}$$

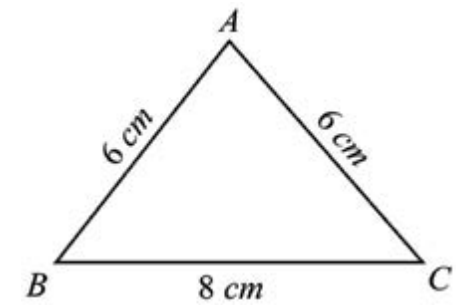
$$\therefore \Delta_{ABC} = \sqrt{10(10-8)(10-6)(10-6)}$$

$$= \sqrt{10 \times 2 \times 4 \times 4}$$

$$= \sqrt{5 \times 2 \times 2 \times 4 \times 4}$$

$$= 2 \times 4\sqrt{5}$$

$$= 8\sqrt{5} \text{ cm}^2$$



• **Finding the Area of a Quadrilateral Region with the help of Hero's Formula**

Since any of the diagonals of a quadrilateral region separates it into two triangular regions so the area of the two triangles will be calculated by Hero's formula. Then these areas of two triangles are added to get the area of the quadrilateral.

**Example 1:** Find the area of quadrilateral  $ABCD$  in which  $m\overline{AB} = 12\text{cm}$ ,  $m\overline{BC} = 17\text{cm}$ ,  $m\overline{CD} = 22\text{cm}$ ,  $m\overline{DA} = 25\text{cm}$  and  $m\overline{BD} = 31\text{cm}$

**Solution:** Area of the quadrilateral  $ABCD = \Delta_{ABD} + \Delta_{BCD}$

For  $\Delta_{ABD}$

$$s = \frac{12 + 31 + 25}{2} = \frac{68}{2} = 34\text{cm}$$

$$\therefore \Delta_{ABD} = \sqrt{34(34-12)(34-31)(34-25)}$$

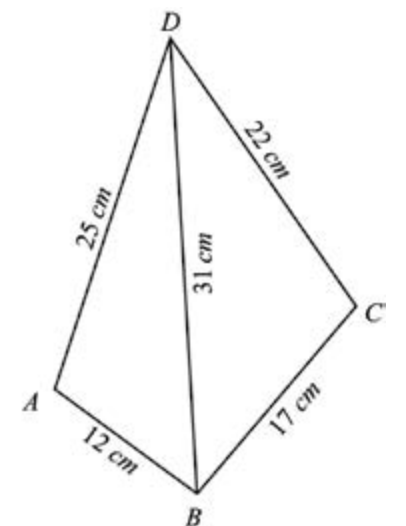
$$= \sqrt{34 \times 22 \times 3 \times 9}$$

$$= \sqrt{17 \times 2 \times 11 \times 2 \times 3 \times 3 \times 3}$$

$$= 2 \times 3\sqrt{17 \times 33}$$

$$= 6 \times 23.69$$

$$= 142.14 \text{ cm}^2$$



$$\text{For } \triangle BCD \quad s = \frac{17 + 22 + 31}{2}$$

$$= \frac{70}{2} = 35 \text{ cm}$$

$$\therefore \triangle BCD = \sqrt{35(35 - 17)(35 - 22)(35 - 31)}$$

$$= \sqrt{35 \times 18 \times 13 \times 4} = \sqrt{35 \times 9 \times 2 \times 13 \times 4}$$

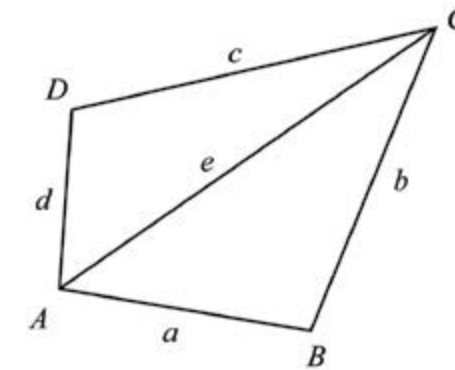
$$= 6 \sqrt{26 \times 35} = 6 \times 30.16$$

$$= 180.96 \text{ cm}^2 \quad (\text{approx})$$

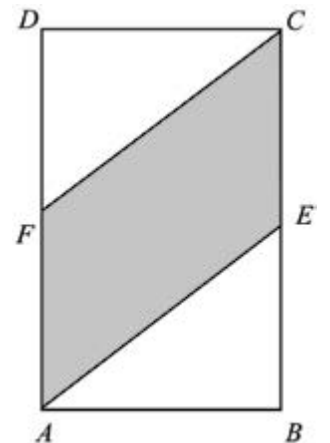
$$\begin{aligned} \therefore \text{Area of the quadrilateral } ABCD &= \triangle ABD + \triangle BCD \\ &= 142.14 + 180.96 \\ &= 323.10 \text{ cm}^2 \quad (\text{approx}) \end{aligned}$$

### EXERCISE 9.2

- The lengths of the sides of a triangle are  $60\text{m}$ ,  $153\text{m}$  and  $111\text{m}$ . Find the area of the triangle.
- Find the area of triangles, when lengths of the sides are given below:
  - $13\text{cm}$ ,  $14\text{cm}$ ,  $15\text{cm}$
  - $5\text{cm}$ ,  $12\text{cm}$ ,  $13\text{cm}$
  - $103\text{cm}$ ,  $115\text{cm}$ ,  $13\text{cm}$
- Find the missing elements as required in each of the following with the help of Hero's formula.
  - $a = 5\text{m}$ ,  $b = 7\text{m}$ ,  $s = 9\text{m}$ ,  $c = \text{---}$ ,  $\triangle ABC = \text{---}$
  - $a = 10\text{m}$ ,  $b = 8\text{m}$ ,  $s = 12\text{m}$ ,  $c = \text{---}$ ,  $\triangle ABC = \text{---}$
  - $a = 3\text{m}$ ,  $s = 9.5\text{m}$ ,  $c = 9\text{m}$ ,  $b = \text{---}$ ,  $\triangle ABC = \text{---}$
  - $a = 3.5\text{m}$ ,  $b = 2.5\text{m}$ ,  $c = 4.5\text{m}$ ,  $s = \text{---}$ ,  $\triangle ABC = \text{---}$
- Find the area of the quadrilateral region ABCD. All measurements are in  $\text{cm}$ .
  - $a = 19$ ,  $b = 12$ ,  $c = 15$ ,  $d = 20$  and  $e = 23$
  - $a = 12$ ,  $b = 14$ ,  $c = 17$ ,  $d = 19$  and  $e = 21$
  - $a = 2$ ,  $b = 2.5$ ,  $c = 3$ ,  $d = 1.5$  and  $e = 3.5$
  - $a = 1.7$ ,  $b = 1$ ,  $c = 1.3$ ,  $d = 1.8$  and  $e = 2.1$



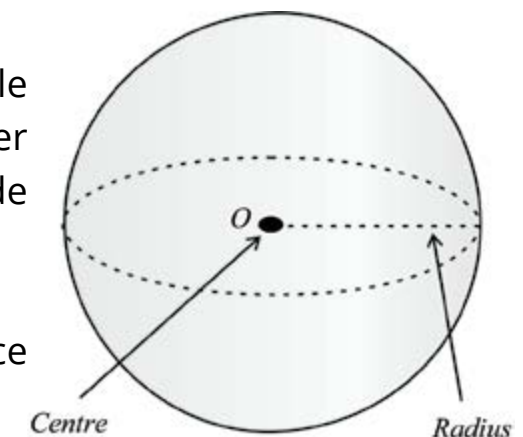
- The given figure, ABCD is of a rectangle of sides  $8\text{cm}$  and  $12\text{cm}$ . E and F are the midpoints of the sides BC and AD respectively. By using Pythagoras Theorem and Hero's Formula, find:
  - The areas of the triangles ABE and FDC.
  - The area of the parallelogram AECF.



### 9.3 SURFACE AREA AND VOLUME OF SPHERE

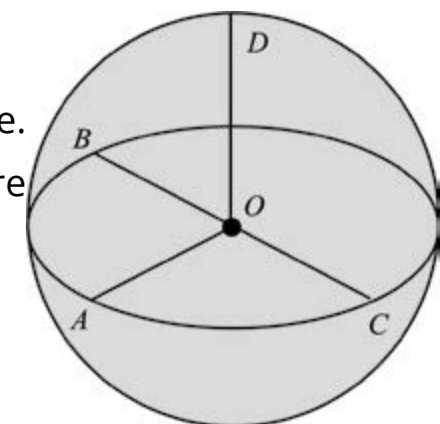
A sphere is a solid bounded by a single curved surface such that all the points on its outer surface are at an equal distance from a fixed point inside the sphere.

The fixed point is called its **Centre**. The distance from center to its outer surface is called its **Radius**.



In the given figure the point O is its Centre. The measurement of line segments  $\overline{OA}$ ,  $\overline{OB}$ ,  $\overline{OC}$  and  $\overline{OD}$  are all its radii and are equal in length.

Cricket ball is the example of a sphere.



### 9.3.1 Finding the Surface Area and Volume of a Sphere

- Surface Area of a Sphere**

A famous scientist **Archimedes** discovered that the surface area of a sphere is equal to the curved surface area of the cylinder whose radius is equal to the radius of the sphere and its height is equal to the diameter of the sphere (i.e. twice the radius).

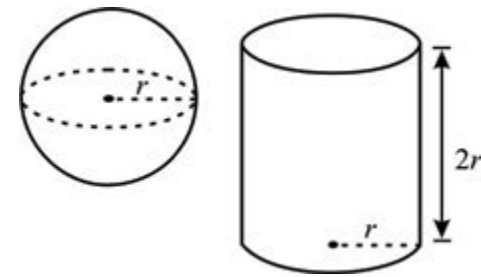
Let the radius of the sphere =  $r$

Radius of the cylinder =  $r$

Height of the cylinder  $h = 2r$

Curved surface area of cylinder =  $2\pi rh$

Surface area of sphere =  $2\pi r(2r) \because h = 2r$   
 $= 4\pi r^2$



**Example 1:** Find the surface area of a sphere whose radius is  $21\text{ cm}$  ( $\pi = \frac{22}{7}$ )

**Solution:** Surface area of a sphere of radius  $r = 4\pi r^2$

Where  $r = 21\text{ cm}$ ,  $\pi = \frac{22}{7}$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Required surface area} = S &= 4 \times \frac{22}{7} \times (21)^2 \\ &= 4 \times \frac{22}{7} \times 21 \times 21 \end{aligned}$$

$$S = 5544\text{ cm}^2$$

**Example 2:** Find the radius of a sphere if the area of its surface is  $6.16\text{ m}^2$ .

**Solution:** Let the area of the curved surface =  $A$

Radius =  $r$

$$A = 4\pi r^2$$

It is given that  $A = 6.16\text{ m}^2$ ,  $\pi = \frac{22}{7}$

$$4\pi r^2 = 6.16\text{ m}^2$$

$$\text{or } r^2 = \frac{6.16}{4\pi}$$

$$r^2 = \frac{6.16 \times 7}{4 \times 22}$$

$$r^2 = 0.49\text{ m}^2$$

$$r = \sqrt{0.49}$$

$$\text{or } r = 0.7\text{ m}$$

- Volume of a Sphere**

Volume of a sphere  $V =$  Two third of the volume of the cylinder  
 (with radius  $r$ ) (with radius  $r$  and height  $2r$ )

$$V = \frac{2}{3} \times \pi r^2 \times 2r = \frac{4}{3} \pi r^3$$

$\therefore$  Volume of a sphere with radius  $r$   $V = \frac{4}{3} \pi r^3$

**Example 1:** How many litres of water a spherical tank can contain whose radius is  $1.4\text{ m}$ .

**Solution:** Volume of a sphere with radius  $r$  is given by

$$V = \frac{4}{3} \pi r^3, \quad r = 1.4\text{ m}$$

$$V = \frac{4}{3} \times \frac{22}{7} \times (1.4)^3 \quad (\because 1\text{ m}^3 = 1000\text{ l})$$

$$\begin{aligned} V &= \frac{4}{3} \times \frac{22}{7} \times 1.4 \times 1.4 \times 1.4 \\ &= 11.499\text{ m}^3 = 11499\text{ l} \end{aligned}$$

**Example 2:** Find the volume of a sphere, the surface area of which is  $2464\text{ cm}^2$ .

**Solution:** Surface area of a sphere of radius  $r$  is  $S = 4\pi r^2$ .

Let  $r$  be the radius of the given sphere, then

$$4\pi r^2 = 2464\text{ cm}^2$$

$$\text{or } r^2 = \frac{2464}{4\pi}$$



$$= \frac{2464 \times 7}{4 \times 22}$$

$$r^2 = 196$$

$$\text{or } r = 14 \text{ cm}$$

Let  $V$  be the volume of the sphere, then

$$\begin{aligned} V &= \frac{4}{3} \pi r^3 \\ &= \frac{4}{3} \pi \times (14)^3 = \frac{4}{3} \times \frac{22}{7} \times (14)^3 \text{ cm}^3 \\ &= \frac{34496}{3} = 11498.66 \text{ cm}^3 \text{ (approx)} \end{aligned}$$

### EXERCISE 9.3

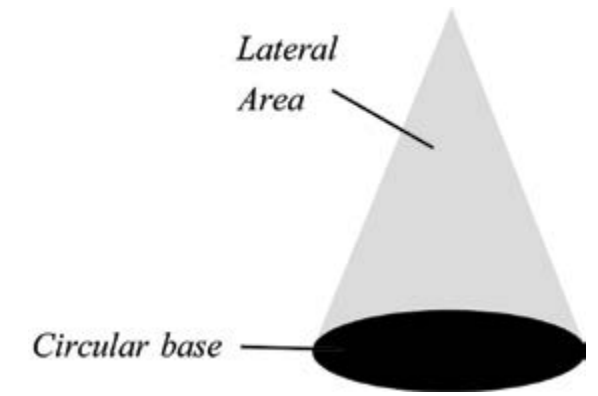
- Find the curved surface area of the spheres whose radii are given below (taking  $\pi = \frac{22}{7}$ )
  - $r = 3.5 \text{ cm}$
  - $r = 2.8 \text{ m}$
  - $0.21 \text{ m}$
- Find the radius of a sphere if its area is given by
  - $154 \text{ m}^2$
  - $231 \text{ m}^2$
  - $308 \text{ m}^2$
- Find the volume of a sphere of radius " $r$ " if  $r$  is given by
  - $5.80 \text{ m}$
  - $8.7 \text{ cm}$
  - $7 \text{ cm}$
  - $3.4 \text{ m}$
- Find the radius and volume of each of the following spheres whose surface areas are given below:
  - $201 \frac{1}{7} \text{ cm}^2$
  - $2.464 \text{ cm}^2$
  - $616 \text{ m}^2$
- A spherical tank is of radius  $7.7 \text{ m}$ . How many litres of water can it contain, when  $1000 \text{ cm}^3 = 1 \text{ litre}$ .
- The radius of sphere  $A$  is twice that of a sphere  $B$ . Find:
  - The ratio among their surface areas.
  - The ratio among their volumes.
- The surface area of a sphere is  $576\pi \text{ cm}^2$ . What will be its volume? If it is melted, how many small spheres of diameter  $1 \text{ cm}$  can be made out of it?

- A solid copper sphere of radius  $3 \text{ cm}$  is melted and electric wire of diameter  $0.4 \text{ cm}$  is made out of the copper obtained. Find the length of the wire.

### 9.3.2. Finding the Surface Area and Volume of a Cone

The given figure is of a cone. Conical solids consist of two parts:

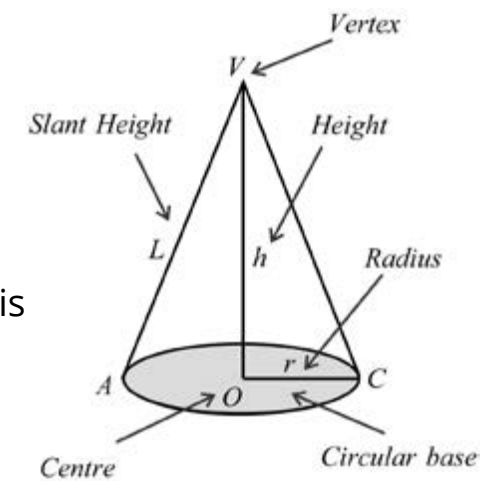
- Circular base.
- Curved surface.



There are 5 elements of cone as shown in the figure given on the right side.

- vertex (the point  $V$ )
- radius ( $m \overline{OC}$ )
- height ( $m \overline{OV}$ )
- slant height ( $m \overline{CV}$ ) or ( $m \overline{AV}$ )
- centre (the point  $O$ )

The line joining the vertex to the centre of the cone is perpendicular to the radial segment of the cone.



#### Finding the Surface Area of a Cone

We know that the area of the circular base of a cone whose radius  $r$ , is given

$$\text{Base area} = \pi r^2$$

Curved surface area of a cone =  $\pi r \ell$  (where  $r$  is radius and  $\ell$  is the slant height)

Total surface area of a cone = Base area + curved surface area

$$= \pi r^2 + \pi r \ell$$

$$= \pi r(r + \ell)$$

**Example 1:** The radius of the base of a cone is  $3 \text{ cm}$  and the height is  $4 \text{ cm}$ . Find its slant height.

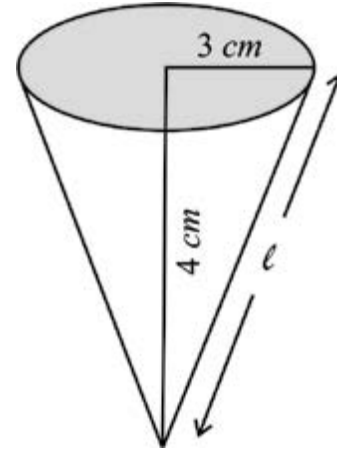
**Solution:** We know that  $l = \sqrt{h^2 + r^2}$

Where  $r = 3\text{cm}$  and  $h = 4\text{cm}$

$$l = \sqrt{3^2 + 4^2} = \sqrt{9 + 16}$$

$$= \sqrt{25}$$

$$l = 5\text{cm}$$



**Example 2:** The radius of a cone's base is  $6\text{cm}$ , slant height is  $10\text{cm}$ . Find its total surface area of the cone.

**Solution:** Radius ( $r$ ) =  $6\text{cm}$ ,  $l = 10\text{cm}$   
Total surface area =  $\pi r (l + r)$

$$= \frac{22}{7} (6) (10 + 6) = \frac{22}{7} \times 96\text{cm}^2$$

$$= \frac{2112}{7} \text{cm}^2 = 301 \frac{5}{7} \text{cm}^2$$

$$\text{Surface area of a cone} = 301 \frac{5}{7} \text{cm}^2$$

**Example 3:** The base area of a cone is  $254 \frac{5}{4} \text{cm}^2$  and slant height is  $15\text{cm}$ . Find its height.

**Solution:** Base area =  $\pi r^2 = 254 \frac{5}{4} \text{cm}^2$

$$r^2 = \frac{1782}{7} \times \frac{7}{22} \text{cm}^2$$

$$= 81\text{cm}^2$$

$$r = 9\text{cm}$$

$$\text{Slant height} = l = 15\text{cm}$$

$$\text{Height} = h = \sqrt{l^2 - r^2}$$

$$= \sqrt{15^2 - 9^2} = 12\text{cm}$$

### Finding Volume of a Cone

Let us find the volume of a cone through an activity.

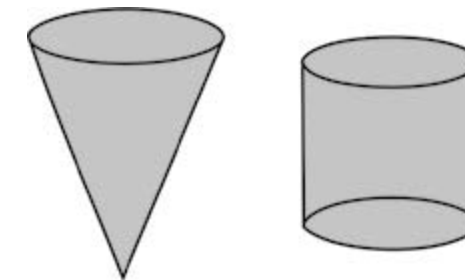
#### Activity:

- Apparatus (i) One sided open hollow cylinder with radius  $r$ .  
units height  $h$  units (Take  $r$  and  $h$  as convenient).  
(ii) A hollow cone with radius  $r$  and height  $h$ .  
(i.e) bases and heights of both should be congruent.  
(iii) Sand

**Step I:** Fill up the cone with sand and pour it into the cylinder.

**Step II:** Fill it up again and pour it into the cylinder.

**Step III:** Fill it up again and pour it into the cylinder.



We know that:

$$\begin{array}{l} 3 \text{ times volume of a cone} = \text{Volume of the cylinder} \\ \text{(with radius } r \text{ and height } h) \qquad \qquad \qquad \text{(with radius } r \text{ and height } h) \end{array}$$

Since we know that the volume of a cylinder with radius  $r$  is  $\pi r^2 h$ .

$$\therefore \text{Volume of a cone} = \frac{1}{3} \pi r^2 h$$

(radius  $r$  and height  $h$ )

$$= \frac{1}{3} (\text{area of the base} \times \text{height})$$

**Example 1:** How much sand can a conical container hold whose height is  $3.5\text{m}$  and radius is  $3\text{m}$ , while  $1\text{m}^3$  space contains  $100\text{kg}$  of sand?

**Solution:** Radius ( $r$ ) =  $3m$ ,  $h = 3.5m$

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Volume of the container} &= \frac{1}{3} \times \frac{22}{7} \times 3^2 \times 3.5 \\ &= 22 \times 3 \times 0.5 \\ &= 33m^3 \\ \text{Sand in } 1m^3 &= 100kg \\ \text{Sand in } 33m^3 &= 3300kg\end{aligned}$$

**Example 2:** A tent in the form of a cone is 5m high and its base is of radius 12m. Find:

- (i) The area of the canvas used to make the tent.  
(ii) The volume of the air space in it.

**Solution:** (i) Area of the curved surface of the cone  
 $= \pi r \ell$   
 $= 12 \pi \times \sqrt{(5)^2 + (12)^2}$   
 $= 12 \pi \times \sqrt{25 + 144}$   
 $= 12 \pi \times \sqrt{169} = 12 \pi \times 13$   
 $= 3.14 \times 156$  (Taking  $\pi = 3.14$  approx)  
 $= 489.84m^2$  (approx)

$\therefore$  The area of the canvas required for the tent is  $489.84m^2$ .

(ii) Volume of the cone  $= \frac{1}{3} \pi r^2 h$   
 $= \frac{1}{3} \pi \times 12^2 \times 5$   
 $= 3.14 \times 4 \times 5 \times 12$   
 $= 3.14 \times 240$   
 $= 753.60m^3$

$\therefore$  The volume of air space in the tent =  $753.60m^3$ .

**Example 3:** The radius and height of a metal cone are respectively 2.4cm and 9.6cm. It is melted and re-casted into a sphere. Find the radius of the sphere.

**Solution:** Let the volume of the cone be =  $V_1$   
 Let the volume of the sphere be =  $V_2$

$$V_1 = \frac{1}{3} \pi r^2 h$$

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Here} & \quad r = 2.4cm \\ \text{and} & \quad h = 9.6cm\end{aligned}$$

Let the radius of the sphere to be formed =  $R$

$$\text{Here} \quad V_2 = \frac{4}{3} \pi R^3$$

$$\text{Now} \quad V_2 = V_1$$

$$\frac{4}{3} \pi R^3 = \frac{1}{3} \pi r^2 h$$

$$4R^3 = r^2 h$$

$$R^3 = \frac{(2.4)^2 \times 9.6}{4} = (2.4)^3$$

$$R = 2.4cm$$

### EXERCISE 9.4

1. Write down the missing element of cones for which (all lengths are in cm)

	$r$	$h$	$\ell$	Curved surface area	Base Area	Total surface area
(i)	–	8	10	–	–	–
(ii)	3	4	–	–	–	–
(iii)	9	–	25	–	–	–
(iv)	–	–	–	–	$154 \text{ cm}^2$	$374 \text{ cm}^2$

2. Find the Volume of the Cone if:

(i)  $r = 3cm$ ,  $h = 4cm$       (ii)  $r = 7cm$ ,  $h = 10cm$

(iii)  $r = 5cm$ ,  $\ell = 7cm$       (iv)  $h = 5cm$ ,  $\ell = 8cm$

3. A conical cup is full of ice-cream. What will be the quantity of the icecream, if the radius and height of the cone are 3cm and 7cm respectively?



4. What will be the total surface area of a solid cone of height  $4\text{cm}$  and radius  $3\text{cm}$ ?
5. The area of the base of cone is  $38.50\text{cm}^2$ . If its height is three times the radius of the base, find its volume.
6. A conical tent is  $8.4\text{m}$  high and its base is of  $54\text{dm}$  radius. It is to be used to accommodate scouts. How many scouts can be accommodated in the tent if each scout requires  $5.832\text{m}^3$  of air?

### REVIEW EXERCISE 9

1. Four options are given against each statement. Encircle the correct one.
  
2. Write short answer of the following questions.
  - (i) State Pythagoras theorem
  - (ii) Write Hero's formula.
  - (iii) Write formula of surface area of a sphere
  - (iv) Write the formula of volume of a cone.
3.
  - (i) Find the volume of a sphere when radius is  $3.2\text{ cm}$ .
  - (ii) Find the volume of the cone if  $r = 3\text{cm}$  and  $h = 4\text{cm}$ .
  - (iii) Find the area of a triangle whose sides are  $4\text{cm}$ ,  $5\text{cm}$  and  $8\text{cm}$ .

### SUMMARY

- In a right angled triangle, the square of the hypotenuse is equal to the sum of the squares of the other two sides.
- Hero's formula for the area of a triangle with sides of length  $a, b, c$  is

$$\Delta = \sqrt{s(s-a)(s-b)(s-c)}, \text{ where } s = \frac{a+b+c}{2}$$

- Surface area of a sphere of radius  $r = 4\pi r^2$

- Volume of a sphere of radius  $r = \frac{4}{3}\pi r^3$
- sphere Total surface area of a cone =  $\pi r(r+l)$ .
- Volume of the cone =  $\frac{1}{3} \times \text{Area of base of cone} \times \text{vertical height of cone}$

$$= \frac{1}{3} \pi r^2 \times h = \frac{1}{3} \pi r^2 h$$

CHAPTER

10

# INFORMATION HANDLING

*Animation 10.1: Information Handling*  
*Source & Credit: eLearn.punjab*

---

## 10.1 FREQUENCY AND FREQUENCY DISTRIBUTION

### 10.1.1 Definitions

#### • Frequency

The number of times a value occurs in a data is called the frequency of that value.

For example: The marks obtained out of 10 in a test by 15 students of a class are as follows:

3, 5, 7, 10, 7, 9, 3, 7, 5, 4, 6, 8, 7, 5, 2.

- The data consists of 15 values.
- Some of the values are occurring more than once e.g. 3, 5, 7.
- The frequency of 3 marks is 2.
- The frequency of 5 marks is 3.
- The frequency of 7 marks is 4.
- All other values have frequency 1.

#### • Frequency Distribution

To write a data in the form of a table in such a way that the frequency of each class can be observed at once is called its **frequency distribution**.

### 10.1.2 Construction of Frequency Distribution Table

Let us consider the given weights in kg of 50 students selected from a school:

35, 30, 32, 36, 31, 40, 35, 42, 35, 45, 37, 41, 33, 37, 30, 28, 29,  
30, 32, 33, 31, 35, 36, 30, 28, 37, 39, 28, 31, 34, 39, 45, 38, 36,  
35, 28, 31, 34, 30, 41, 35, 36, 41, 28, 31, 34, 30, 29, 28, 37

We note that the weights of the selected students range from 28 kg to 45 kg. We arrange the data in groups in the form of a table as below:

Class Interval	Frequency
28 – 30	14
31 – 33	9
34 – 36	13
37 – 39	7
40 – 42	5
43 – 45	2
<b>Total:</b>	<b>50</b>

In the above table the frequency of the group of students whose weights from 28 kg to 30kg are 14 and similarly the other class frequencies can easily be seen.

- (i) Look for the largest value and the smallest value i.e. 45 and 28 respectively.
- (ii) Number of classes to be made is 6.
- (iii) For finding the size of class interval use the formula.

$$\text{Size of class interval} = \frac{\text{largest value} - \text{smallest value}}{\text{number of classes}}$$

$$= \frac{45 - 28}{6} = \frac{17}{6}$$

$$\approx 2.8 \approx 3$$

#### Example 1:

Listed below are the scores of 50 students in a 60 marks test.

25, 33, 26, 34, 28, 35, 29, 36, 30, 54, 30, 39, 36, 37, 39, 40, 37, 34,  
27, 41, 37, 41, 38, 42, 48, 51, 40, 51, 43, 40, 41, 39, 48, 51, 53, 41,  
37, 52, 28, 46, 44, 37, 39, 52, 51, 40, 45, 46, 43, 53

Make a frequency distribution table taking 6 classes of equal size by tally marks.

#### Solution

Lowest value = 25

Highest value = 54

Total classes to be made = 6

We take the size of class =  $\frac{54 - 25}{6}$

$$= \frac{29}{6} = 5 \text{ (approx.)}$$

Class Interval	Tally Mark	Frequency
25 – 29		6
30 – 34		5
35 – 39		13
40 – 44		12
45 – 49		5
50 – 54		9
<b>Total:</b>		<b>50</b>

**Example 2:** The number of units of electricity consumed by 31 households are listed below. Construct a frequency table with 10 classes?

727, 773, 859, 711, 860, 747, 862, 738, 774, 852, 791, 836, 834,  
752, 828, 792, 908, 839, 752, 715, 880, 838, 852, 816, 751, 834,  
818, 835, 831, 778, 837

**Solution:**

Lowest value = 711

Highest value = 908

Total classes to be made = 10

We take the size of class =  $\frac{908-711}{10}$

$$= \frac{197}{10} = 19.7 \approx 20$$

Class Interval	Tally Mark	Frequency
711 – 730		3
731 – 750		2
751 – 770		3
771 – 790		3
791 – 810		2
811 – 830		3
831 – 850		8
851 – 870		5
871 – 890		1
891 – 910		1
<b>Total:</b>		<b>31</b>

### 10.1.3: Construction of Histogram

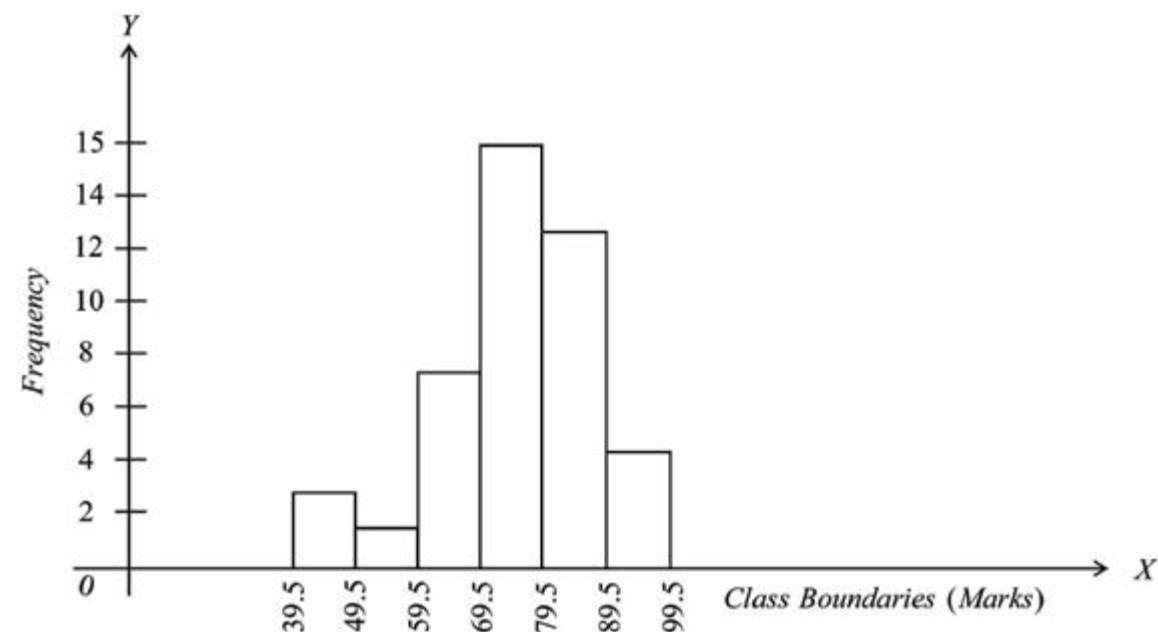
We are familiar with pie and bar graphs another common graphic way of presenting data is by means of a histogram. A histogram is similar to bar graph but it is constructed for a frequency table.

In a histogram the values of the data (classes) are represented along the horizontal axis and the frequencies are shown by bars perpendicular to the horizontal axis. Bars of equal width are used to represent individual classes of frequency table.

To draw a histogram from a grouped data, the following steps are followed.

- (i) Draw X-axis and Y-axis.
- (ii) Mark class boundaries of the classes along X-axis.
- (iii) Mark frequencies along Y-axis.
- (iv) Draw a bar for each class so that the height of the bar drawn for each class is equal to the frequency of the class.

The graph is shown below:



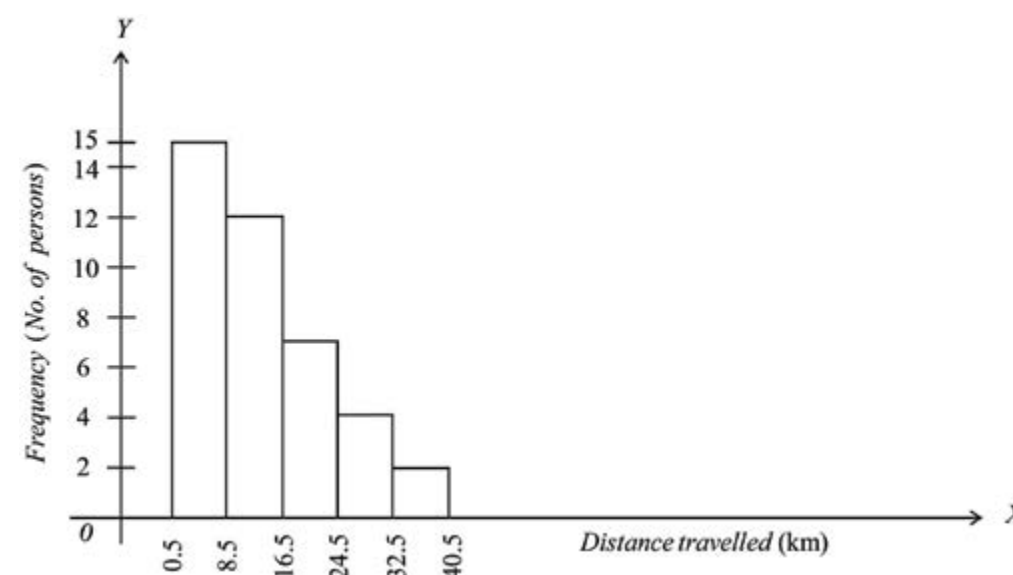
**Example 1:** The detail of distances travelled daily by the residents of a locality are given below. Construct a histogram for the following frequency table.

Distance travelled (in km)	1 – 8	9 – 16	17 – 24	25 – 32	33 – 40
Number of persons	15	12	7	4	2

**Solution:** Frequency distribution table is:

Distance travelled (km)	Class boundnes	Frequency (No.of Persons)
1 – 8	0.5 – 8.5	15
9 – 16	8.5 – 16.5	12
17 – 24	16.5 – 24.5	7
25 – 32	24.5 – 32.5	4
33 – 40	32.5 – 40.5	2
<b>Total:</b>		<b>40</b>

Histogram:



### EXERCISE 10.1

- The following data displays the number of draws of different categories of bonds.  
35, 55, 64, 70, 99, 89, 87, 65, 67, 38, 62, 60, 70, 78, 69, 86, 39, 71, 56, 75, 51, 99, 68, 95, 86, 53, 59, 50, 47, 55, 81, 80, 98, 51, 63, 66, 79, 85, 83, 70  
Construct a frequency distribution table for the above data, with seven classes of equal size and of class interval 10.
- Listed below are the number of electricity units consumed by 50 households in a low income group locality of Lahore.  
55, 45, 64, 130, 66, 155, 80, 102, 62, 60, 101, 58, 75, 81, 111, 90, 55, 151, 66, 139, 77, 99, 67, 51, 50, 125, 83, 55, 136, 91, 86, 54, 78, 100, 113, 93, 104, 111, 113, 96, 96, 87, 109, 94, 129, 99, 69, 83, 97, 97  
With 12 classes of equal width of 10, construct a frequency table for the electricity units consumed.
- The following list is of scores in a mathematics examination. Using the starting class 40 – 44, set up a frequency distribution. List the class boundaries and class marks.  
63, 88, 79, 92, 86, 87, 83, 78, 40, 67, 68, 76, 46, 81, 92, 77, 84, 76, 70, 66, 77, 75, 98, 81, 82, 81, 87, 78, 70, 60, 94, 79, 52, 82, 77, 81, 77, 70, 74, 61

4. Construct a frequency distribution for the following numbers using 1 — 10 as the starting class. List the class boundaries.  
54, 67, 63, 64, 57, 56, 55, 53, 53, 54, 44, 45, 45, 46, 47, 37, 23, 34, 44, 27, 36, 45, 34, 36, 15, 23, 43, 16, 44, 34, 36, 35, 37, 24, 24, 14, 43, 37, 27, 36, 33, 25, 36, 26, 5, 44, 13, 33, 33, 17
5. Following are the number of days that 36 tourists stayed in some city.  
1, 6, 16, 21, 41, 21, 5, 31, 20, 27, 17, 10, 3, 32, 2, 48, 8, 12, 21, 44, 1, 36, 5, 12, 3, 13, 15, 10, 18, 3, 1, 11, 14, 12, 64, 10.  
Construct a frequency distribution starting with the class 1 – 7.
6. Construct a histogram for each of the frequency tables in questions 1 – 5.

## 10.2 MEASURES OF CENTRAL TENDENCY

In the previous section we have learnt to arrange data into a frequency distribution table to understand the given data easily. Some time, the volume of data is large and it is very difficult to compare, understand and analyze. Then there is need to make that data comparable to avoid difficulty and complexity.

### 10.2.1 Description of Measures of Central Tendency

The **Measures of Central Tendency** are the Concepts of Average, Mean, Mode and Median.

### 10.2.2 Calculation of Measures of Central Tendency

#### • Mean (Average)

Let  $x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n$  be  $n$  given quantities. Then their average is the value presenting the tendency of these quantities and is called their Mean value or Mean. It can be calculated by the formula:

$$\bar{X} = \frac{x_1 + x_2 + \dots + x_n}{n}$$

$$\bar{X} = \frac{\text{sum of all values}}{\text{number of values}}$$

#### Example:

The scores of a student in eight papers are 58, 72, 65, 85, 94, 78, 87, 85. Find the mean score.

$$\bar{X} = \frac{58 + 72 + 65 + 85 + 94 + 78 + 87 + 85}{8}$$

$$\bar{X} = \frac{624}{8} = 78$$

Hence, mean score is 78

#### • Weighted Mean

When all values of given data have same importance, then we use mean. But when different values have different importance then these values are known as weights.

If  $x_1, x_2, x_3, \dots, x_n$  have the weights  $w_1, w_2, w_3, \dots, w_n$  then:

$$\text{Weighted Mean} = \bar{X}_w = \frac{w_1x_1 + w_2x_2 + w_3x_3 + \dots + w_nx_n}{w_1 + w_2 + w_3 + \dots + w_n} = \frac{\sum xw}{\sum w}$$

#### Example:

The following data describes the marks of a student in different subjects and weights assign to these subjects are also given:

Marks ( $x$ )	74	78	74	90
Weights ( $W$ )	4	3	5	6

Find its weighted mean:

#### Solution:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Weighted Mean} &= \bar{X}_w = \frac{4(74) + 3(78) + 5(74) + 6(90)}{4 + 3 + 5 + 6} \\ &= \frac{296 + 234 + 370 + 540}{18} \\ &= \frac{1440}{18} = 80 \end{aligned}$$

- **Median**

If a data is arranged in ascending or descending order, then median of the data is:

- (a) The middle value of the data, if it consists of odd number of values.
- (b) The mean of the two middle values of the data is the Median of the data if the number of values in a data is even.

**Example:** The weights in kg of 9 students are as under, find the median:  
29, 32, 45, 27, 30, 47, 35, 37, 33

**Solution:**

Arranging these values in descending order:

$\overline{47}, \overline{45}, \overline{37}, \overline{35}, \overline{33}, \overline{32}, \overline{30}, \overline{29}, \overline{27}$

The middle value is 33

So, Median = 33

- **Mode**

Mode is the value that occurs most frequently in a data. In case no value is repeated in a data then the data has no mode. If two or more values occur with the same greatest frequency, then each is a mode.

**Example 1:** Find the mode of the given data:  
1, 2, 5, 7, 8, 2, 2, 4, 3, 5, 7

**Solution:** The value 2 is repeated the most, so 2 is the mode of this data.

**Example 2:** Find the mode of the given data:  
2, 4, 6, 8, 10, 12, 14, 16, 20

**Solution:** This data has no mode because no value is repeated in the given data:

**Example 3:** Find the mode of the data given below:  
1, 2, 2, 2, 3, 4, 5, 5, 5, 6, 7

**Solution:** Since 2 is repeated 3 times and 5 is also repeated 3 times so this data has two

modes i.e., 2 and 5.

**Remember that:**

- (i) A data can have more than one Mode.
- (ii) A data may or may not have a Mode.

### 10.2.3 Real life problems involving Mean, Weighted Mean, Median and Mode

**Example:**

The heights of 12 students (in centimeters) of 8<sup>th</sup> class are given below:

148, 144, 145, 146, 148, 150, 145, 155, 151, 152, 145, 149

- (i) Find the average height of a student.
- (ii) Find the most common height.
- (iii) Find the Median height.

**Solution:**

Arrange the given data in ascending order:

144, 145, 145, 145, 146, 148, 148, 149, 150, 151, 152, 155

$$(i) \text{ Mean (average)} = \frac{144 + 145 + 145 + 145 + 146 + 148 + 148 + 149 + 150 + 151 + 152 + 155}{12}$$

$$= \frac{1778}{12} = 148.16$$

Therefore, average height of a student is 148.16cm

- (ii) The most occurred value is 145 (3 times)
- (iii) The total number of values is 12. So, 6<sup>th</sup> and 7<sup>th</sup> terms are the middle values of data.

$$\therefore \text{Median} = \left( \frac{6^{\text{th}} \text{ term} + 7^{\text{th}} \text{ term}}{2} \right)$$

$$= \frac{148 + 148}{2} = \frac{296}{2} = 148$$

Therefore, the median is 148 cm



## EXERCISE 10.2

1. Compute the mean, median and mode of the following data:
- (i) 10, 8, 6, 0, 8, 3, 2, 5, 8, 4  
(ii) 1, 3, 5, 3, 5, 3, 7, 5, 7, 5, 7  
(iii) 5, 4, 1, 4, 0, 3, 4, 119  
(iv) 62, 90, 71, 83, 75  
(v) 45, 65, 80, 92, 80, 75, 56, 96, 62, 78  
(vi) Number of letters in first 20 words in a book.  
3, 2, 5, 3, 3, 2, 3, 3, 2, 4, 2, 2, 3, 2, 3, 5, 3, 4, 4, 5  
(vii) The number of calories in nine different beverages of 250mm bottles:  
99, 106, 101, 103, 108, 107, 107, 106, 108  
(viii) Number of rooms in 15 houses of a locality city  
5, 9, 8, 6, 8, 7, 6, 7, 9, 8, 7, 9, 7, 8, 5  
(ix) Number of books in 10 school libraries, (in hundreds)  
78, 215, 35, 267, 39, 17, 418, 286, 335, 50.  
(x) Cost per day on a patient in 10 private hospitals (in rupees)  
4125, 2500, 3115, 6580, 7150, 3750, 5920, 4575, 3225, 2500

2. A person purchased the following food items:

Food item	Quantity (in kg)	Cost per kg (in Rs.)
Rice	10	96
Aata	12	48
Ghee	4	190
Sugar	3	49
Mutton	2	650

What is the average cost of food items per kg?

3. The following distances (in km) were travelled by 40 students to reach their school.  
2, 8, 1, 5, 9, 5, 14, 10, 31, 20, 15, 4, 10, 6, 5, 10, 5, 18, 12, 25, 30, 27, 20, 3,  
9, 15, 15, 18, 10, 1, 1, 6, 25, 16, 7, 12, 1, 8, 21, 12.  
Compute the mean, median and mode of the distances traveled.
4. Following table lists the size of 127 families:

Size of family	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
Frequency	51	31	27	12	4	1	1

Compute the mean, median and mode.

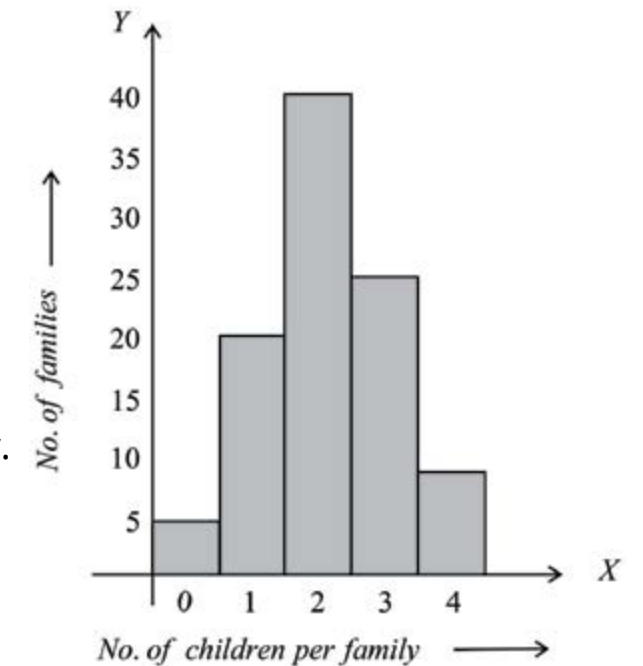
5. Find the class mark and mean of the following frequency table:

Class Interval	0 – 39	40 – 79	80 – 119	120 – 159	160 – 199
Frequency	17	41	80	99	4

6. Find the mean of the following frequency table:

Class interval	1 - 5	6 - 10	11 - 15	16 - 20	21 - 25	26 - 30	31 - 35	36 - 40
Frequency	19	24	18	21	23	20	16	15

7. The diagram illustrates the number of children per family of a sample of 100 families in a certain housing estate:
- (a) State the modal number of children per family.  
(b) Calculate the mean number of children per family.  
(c) Find the median number of children per family.



## REVIEW EXERCISE 10

1. Four options are given against each statement. Encircle the correct one.

2. Calculate the mean, median and mode for each set of data given below:
- (a) 3, 6, 3, 7, 4, 3, 9      (b) 11, 10, 12, 12, 9, 10, 14, 12, 9
- (c) 2, 9, 7, 3, 5, 5, 6, 5, 4, 9      (d) 6, 8, 11, 5, 2, 9, 7, 8
- (e) 153.8, 154.7, 156.9, 154.3, 152.3, 156.1, 152.3
3. Test scores of a class of 20 students are as follows:  
93, 84, 97, 98, 100, 78, 86, 100, 85, 92, 72, 55, 91, 90, 75, 94, 83, 60, 81, 95  
Draw a frequency distribution table and histogram for grouped data.
4. The price of 10 litre of drinking water was recorded at several stores, and the results are displayed in the table below:

Price (Rs.)	Frequency
74	1
75	2
76	8
77	10
78	2
79	1
80	1

Find the mean, median and mode of the price.

### SUMMARY

- Frequency is a number which indicates how often a value occurs.
- A frequency distribution is a summary of how often different scores occur within a sample of scores.
- A frequency distribution table is one way we can organize data so that it makes more sense. We could draw a frequency distribution table, which will give a better picture of our data than a simple list.
- A histogram is a representation of a frequency distribution by means of rectangles whose widths represent class intervals and whose areas are proportional to the corresponding frequencies.
- A measure of central tendency is a single value that attempts to describe data by identifying the central position within that data.

- Central tendency is defined as “the statistical measure that identifies a single value as representative of an entire distribution”.
- Arithmetic mean (or, simply, “mean or average”) is the most popular and well known measure of central tendency.
- The mean is equal to the sum of all the values in the data divided by the number of values in the data:

$$\text{Mean} = \frac{\text{sum of data}}{\text{number of observations}} \text{ or } \bar{x} = \frac{x_1 + x_2 + x_3 + \dots + x_n}{n}$$

- Median is the value which occupies the middle position when all the observations are arranged in an ascending / descending order.
  - (a) The middle value of the data, if it consists of odd number of values.
  - (b) The mean of the two middle values of the data is the Median of the data if the number of values in a data is even.
- Mode is defined as the value that occurs most frequently in the data. Some data do not have a mode because each value occurs only once.